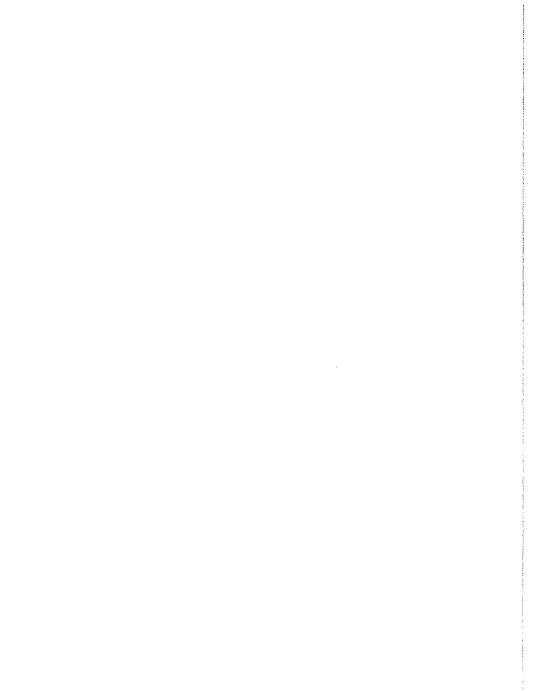
A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

Azim Baizoyev and John Hayward





A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

This is a conversational approach to the teaching and learning of the Tajiki language. It uses authentic language material to help learners as they proceed through its topic-based lessons. Its emphasis on the spoken language promotes oral fluency alongside written skills. Both lessons and appendices present new vocabulary and grammar simply and recycle material to provide opportunities for both controlled and free language learning.

The appendices include not only lists of useful information and samples of commonly needed letters and speeches, but also an invaluable introduction to Tajiki grammar and a comprehensive Tajiki–English dictionary of all the book's vocabulary – over 4500 definitions.

Azim Baizoyev holds a BA, MA and PhD in oriental languages. He teaches in the Tajik State University's Department of Iranian Philology and has been teaching Tajiki, Farsi and Russian as foreign languages since 1993 to the international staff of various embassies and foreign organisations working in Dushanbe. He has published numerous books and articles, including two textbooks for Tajiki-speakers learning Farsi.

John Hayward gained a degree in natural sciences and a PhD in genetics from Cambridge University, England, before going on to train as a teacher of English as a foreign language, in which field he holds the RSA/Cambridge CTEFLA and an MA in TESOL from Azusa Pacific University, California. He has taught English as a foreign language in Tajikistan since 1995 and is now director of a non-governmental organisation contributing to educational development.

First published 2004 by RoutledgeCurzon 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by RoutledgeCurzon 29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Routledge Curzon is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

© 2004 Azim Baizoyev and John Hayward

Typeset by the authors
Printed and bound in Great Britain by
St Edmundsbury Press, Bury St Edmunds, Suffolk

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data A catalog record for this book has been requested.

> ISBN 0-415-31597-2 (hbk) ISBN 0-415-31598-0 (pbk)

Ба чашни пуршукўхи 10-солагии Истиклолияти Чумхурии Точикистон бахшида мешавад.

Забони хар миллат ёдгории азизест, ки решаи он аз сарчашмаи чандин наслхои нажоди ў об хўрда, мояи ифтихору худшиносин наслхои баъдина мегардад.

Э.Ш.Рахмонов

Dedicated to the grand celebration of Tajikistan's tenth anniversary of independence.

"Each nation's language is a precious legacy whose roots have drawn from the source of many generations of its people and which will be the cause of pride and self-knowledge for future generations."

E.Rahmonov

CONTENTS

Editor's Preface Дарси I Lesson I I Дарси Опочикй The Tajiki Alphabet I Транскрипсия The Tajiki Alphabet The Tajiki Alphabet Транскрипсия Transcription Stress Дарси 2 Lesson 2 7 Мурочиат Forms of Address 6 Ulunocoü Getting Acquainted 13 Grammar Personal Pronouns 13 The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" Possessive Determiners Pronominal Suffixes 17 The Copylla "Acm" Lesson 3 17 Grammar Family 17 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions 27 Maopuф - Kacбy кор Education - Professions 27 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns 38 "Acm" and "Xacm" 42 Lesson 5 House - Courtyard - Garden Fresent-Future Tense 38 Nona - Xaenü - Бог (идома) House - Courtyard - Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns Infinitives <t< th=""><th>Official Preface Translation of the Official Preface</th><th></th><th>xi xii</th></t<>	Official Preface Translation of the Official Preface		xi xii
Алифбои точикй The Tajiki Alphabet Алифбои Точикй The Tajiki Alphabet Транскрипсия Transcription Зада Stress Дарси 2 Lesson 2 Мурочиат Forms of Address Шиносой Getting Acquainted Grammar Personal Pronouns 13 The Inflectional Suffix ** IZofat" Possessive Determiners Prosessive Determiners Promominal Suffixes The Conjunction ** Inflectional Suffix ** IZofat" Prosent Tuture Tense Japcu 3 Lesson 3 17 Crammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-io") 1 Lesson 4 Lesson 4 27 Maopuф - Kac6y кор Education - Professions 2 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 2 Lesson 5 38 Xona - Xaonü - Бое House - Courtyard - Garden Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po"	Editor's Preface		
Алифбон Точикй The Tajiki Alphabet Транскрипсия Transcription Зада Stress Дарси 2 Lesson 2 7 Мурочиат Getting Acquainted Grammar Personal Pronouns 13 The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" Possessive Determiners Pronominal Suffixes The Copula "Acm" Lesson 3 17 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-io") 24 Maopuф – Kac6y кор Education – Professions 40 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Phual Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" Lesson 5 Lesson 5 38 Xona – Xasnū – Бое House – Courtyard – Garden 42 Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles 1 Imperatives Lesson 6 49 Xona – Xasnū – Бог (uòoma) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) 1 Infelinite Nouns Inflinitives 4 <td>Дарси 1</td> <td></td> <td>1</td>	Дарси 1		1
Транскрипсия Transcription Зада Stress Дарси 2 Lesson 2 7 Мурочиат Forms of Address 7 Шиносой Getting Acquainted 13 Grammar Personal Pronounts 13 The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" Possessive Determiners Prosessive Determiners Prominal Suffixes The Copula "Acm" 17 Lesson 3 17 Grammar Family Grammar Present-Future Tense Simple Questions 22 The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-10") 24 Lesson 4 Lesson 4 Education - Professions 27 More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" Jaccu 5 Lesson 5 Xona - Xaenū - Boe House - Courtyard - Garden Grammar Prepositions Jaccu 6 Lesson 6 Xona - Xaenū - Boe (udoma) House - Courtyard - Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns Inflightites	Алифбои точикй		
Зада Stress 7 Дарси 2 Lesson 2 7 Мурочиат Forms of Address 7 Шиносой Getting Acquainted 1 Grammar Personal Pronouns 13 The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" Possessive Determiners Pronominal Suffixes The Copula "Acm" Lesson 3 17 Ouna Family Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-ю") 27 Maopuф – Kac6y кор Education – Professions More Present-Future Tense 32 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Acm – Xacnū – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden 42 Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Japcu 6 Lesson 6 49 Mona – Xaenū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Indefinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past	Алифбои Точикй		
Дарси 2 Lesson 2 7 Мурочиат Forms of Address 1 Шиносой Getting Acquainted 1 Grammar Personal Pronouns 13 The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" 1 Possessive Determiners 1 Pronominal Suffixes 1 The Copula "Acm" 1 Lesson 3 17 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-10") 2 Hapcu 4 Lesson 4 2 Maoputh – Kac6y кор Education – Professions 2 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 32 Lesson 5 Lesson 5 38 Xona – Xacnū – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Lesson 6 Lesson 6 49 Xona – Xacnū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns 1 I	Транскрипсия	Transcription	
Мурочиат ШиносойForms of Address Getting AcquaintedGrammarForms of Address Getting AcquaintedGrammarPersonal Pronouns Prossessive Determiners Pronominal Suffixes The Copula "Acm"Дарси 3Lesson 3 	Зада	Stress	
Мурочиат Forms of Address Шиносой Getting Acquainted - Grammar Personal Pronouns 13 The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" Possessive Determiners Prosmoulal Suffixes The Copula "Acm" 17 Mapcu 3 Lesson 3 17 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-ю") Lesson 4 Lesson 4 27 Maopuф - Kac6y кор Education - Professions 26 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Xona - Хавлй - Бог House - Courtyard - Garden 42 Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Japcu 6 Lesson 6 Lesson 6 49 Xona - Хавлй - Бог (идома) House - Courtyard - Garden (continued) 54 Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense	Дарси 2	Lesson 2	7
Шиносой Getting Acquainted Grammar Personal Pronouns 13 In Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" Possessive Determiners Pronominal Suffixes The Copula "Acm" In Inflectional Suffixes Ithere Inflectional Suffixes The Copula "Acm" Ithere Inflectional Suffixes In Inflectional Suffixes Ithere Inflectional Suffixes The Copula "Acm" Ithere Inflectional Suffixes In Inflectional Suffixes Ithere In Inflectional Suffixes In Inflectional Suffixes Ithere In Inflectional Suffixes In Inflectional Suffixes Ither In Inflectional Suffixes In Interest The Inflectional Suffixes Ithere In Inflectional Suffixes In Interest The Interes		Forms of Address	
Пре Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat" Роззеязive Determiners Pronominal Suffixes Тhe Copula "Acm" 17 Дарси 3 Lesson 3 17 Ouna Family 22 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-ю") 27 Maopuф – Kac6y кор Education – Professions 27 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Acm" and "Xacm" 42 Lesson 5 38 Mouse – Courtyard – Garden 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Imperatives Japcu 6 Lesson 6 49 Xona – Xaenū – Бог (udoma) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Xonau xyd 58 Japcu 7 Lesson 7 61 Baқm – Фасл		Getting Acquainted	
Possessive Determiners Pronominal Suffixes The Copula "Acm" Дарси 3	Grammar	Personal Pronouns	13
Дарси 3 Lesson 3 17 Ошла Family 22 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-10") 27 Дарси 4 Lesson 4 27 Maopuф – Kac6y кор Education – Professions 27 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Lesson 5 Lesson 5 38 Xona – Xaenū – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden 42 Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives 42 Lesson 6 49 Xona – Xaenū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Reading Xohau xyð 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Baқт — Фасл – Обу ҳаво Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pyɔu кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Countries – Nati		The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat"	
Дарси 3 The Copula "Acm" 17 Ouna Family 17 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-ю") 27 Maopuф - Kac6y кор Education - Professions 27 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Maopu 5 Lesson 5 38 Xona - Xaenū - Бог House - Courtyard - Garden 42 Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives 42 Lesson 6 49 Xona - Xaenū - Бог (идома) House - Courtyard - Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Reading Xonau xyò 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Baқm - Фасл - Обу ҳaso Time - Seasons - Weather Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pȳsu κορυυ ман 72 L		Possessive Determiners	
Дарси 3 Lesson 3 17 Ouла Family 22 Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-10") 27 Maopuф – Kac6y кор Education – Professions 32 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nours "Acm" and "Xacm" Lesson 5 38 Xona – Xasnū – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Imperatives Imperatives Vona – Xasnū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Cesson 7 61 Bakm – Фасл – Обу хаво Time – Seasons – Weather Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pyōu кории ман 72 Lesson 8 Countries – Nationalities – Languages Kiuusapxo – Миллатхо		Pronominal Suffixes	
Ошла Family Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-10") 27 Maopuф – Kac6y кор Grammar Education – Professions 32 More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Lesson 5 38 Xona – Xaenū – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives 42 Lesson 6 49 Xona – Xaenū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Xonau xyò 58 Apcu 7 Esson 7 Bakm – Фасл – Обу хаво Time – Seasons – Weather Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Py3u кории ман 72 Apcu 8 Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives <td></td> <td>The Copula "Acm"</td> <td></td>		The Copula "Acm"	
Опла Family Grammar Present-Future Tense 22 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-10") Дарси 4 Lesson 4 27 Maopuф – Kac6y кор Education – Professions 32 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" Lesson 5 18 Xona – Xaenū – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Lesson 6 49 Xona – Xaenū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) 54 Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense 55 Reading Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Eason 7 61 Baқm – Фасл – Обу ҳaeo Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pȳзu кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past Compara	Дарси 3	Lesson 3	17
Парси 4 Simple Questions The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-ю") 27 Маориф – Касбу кор Education – Professions 32 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Mana – Xaenū – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives 49 Lesson 6 49 Xona – Xaenū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense 5imple Past Tense Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Baқm – Фасл – Обу ҳаво Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pȳɔu κορυυ ман 72 Дарси 8 Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Grammar Comparatives and Superlatives		Family	
Дарси 4 Lesson 4 27 Маориф – Касбу кор Education – Professions 32 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" 38 Дарси 5 Lesson 5 38 Хона – Хавлй – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden 42 Grammar Prepositions 42 Парси 6 Lesson 6 49 Хона – Хавлй – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Baқт – Фасл – Обу ҳаво Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pyōu кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Grammar Comparatives and Superlatives	Grammar	Present-Future Tense	22
Дарси 4 Lesson 4 27 Маориф – Касбу кор Education – Professions 32 Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" Lesson 5 38 Xona – Хаелй – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Lesson 6 49 Xona – Хаелй – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Baқm – Фасл – Обу хаво Time – Seasons – Weather Numbers 68 Grammar Numbers 68 74 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 74 Кишвархо – Миллатхо – Забонхо Countries – Nationalities – Languages Descriptive Past 80 Grammar Comparatives and Superlatives 80		Simple Questions	
Маориф – Касбу корEducation – ProfessionsGrammarMore Present-Future Tense32Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm"38Дарси 5Lesson 538Xona – Хавлй – БогHouse – Courtyard – Garden42GrammarPrepositions The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives49Дарси 6Lesson 649Xona – Хавлй – Бог (идома)House – Courtyard – Garden (continued)54GrammarIndefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense54ReadingXonau xyd58Дарси 7Lesson 761Вақт – Фасл – Обу хаво GrammarTime – Seasons – Weather68ReadingPȳзи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишьвархо – Миллатхо – Забонхо GrammarCountries – Nationalities – Languages Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives80		The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-ю")	
Maopuф – Касбу кор GrammarEducation – Professions More Present-Future Tense Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm"Дарси 5 Хона – Хавлй – Бог GrammarLesson 5 House – Courtyard – Garden Prepositions The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives42Дарси 6 Хона – Хавлй – Бог (идома) GrammarLesson 6 House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense54Reading Дарси 7 Вақт – Фасл – Обу хаво GrammarХонаи худ Lesson 7 Time – Seasons – Weather Numbers Reading Pysu кории ман Lesson 8 Countries – Nationalities – Languages Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives74	Дарси 4	Lesson 4	27
Grammar More Present-Future Tense 32 Plural Forms of Nouns "Acm" and "Xacm" Дарси 5 Lesson 5 38 Xona – Хавлй – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden 42 Grammar Prepositions 42 Перси 6 Lesson 6 49 Xona – Хавлй – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Reading Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Вақт – Фасл – Обу ҳаво Time – Seasons – Weather 6 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pȳзи кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 74 Кишвархо – Миллатхо – Забоихо Countries – Nationalities – Languages 74 Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Comparatives and Superlatives 80		Education – Professions	
Дарси 5 Lesson 5 38 Хопа – Хавлй – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden 2 Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Imperatives Xona – Хавлй – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Barm – Фасл – Обу хаво Time – Seasons – Weather Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Рузи кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 74 Кишвархо – Миллатхо – Забоихо Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Comparatives and Superlatives 80		More Present-Future Tense	32
Дарси 5 Lesson 5 38 Хопа – Хавлй – Бог House – Courtyard – Garden 42 Grammar Prepositions 42 The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Imperatives Дарси 6 Lesson 6 49 Хопа – Хавлй – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense 58 Reading Хонаи худ 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Вақт – Фасл – Обу ҳаво Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Рузи кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives		Plural Forms of Nouns	
Жона — Хавяй — Бог Grammar Grammar House — Courtyard — Garden Prepositions The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives Lesson 6 Vona — Хавяй — Бог (идома) Grammar Indefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Reading Дарси 7 Вакт — Фасл — Обу хаво Grammar Reading Рузи кории ман Дарси 8 Кишвархо — Миллатхо — Забоихо Grammar Occurtyard — Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Xoнаи худ Бакт — Seasons — Weather Numbers Easson 7 Augreu 8 Countries — Nationalities — Languages Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives		"Acm" and "Xacm"	
Xona — Хавлй — Бог GrammarHouse — Courtyard — Garden Prepositions The Direct Object Marker "-po" Question Particles Imperatives42Дарси 6Lesson 649Xona — Хавлй — Бог (идома) GrammarHouse — Courtyard — Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense54Reading Дарси 7 Вақт — Фасл — Обу ҳаво Grammar Reading Дарси 8Тime — Seasons — Weather Numbers Numbers Py3u кории ман Lesson 868Кишварҳо — Миллатҳо — Забоиҳо GrammarCountries — Nationalities — Languages Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives	Дарси 5	Lesson 5	38
Grammar Prepositions		House – Courtyard – Garden	
Дарси 6Lesson 649Хопа – Хавлй – Бог (идома)House – Courtyard – Garden (continued)GrammarIndefinite Nouns54InfinitivesPresent-Future TenseSimple Past TenseSimple Past TenseReadingXonau xyd58Дарси 7Lesson 761Вақт – Фасл – Обу хавоTime – Seasons – WeatherGrammarNumbers68ReadingРузи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишвархо – Миллатхо – ЗабоихоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past80Comparatives and Superlatives	Grammar	Prepositions	42
Дарси 6 Lesson 6 49 Хопа – Хавлй – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Reading Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Вақт – Фасл – Обу хаво Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Рузи кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 74 Кишвархо – Миллатхо – Забоихо Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Comparatives and Superlatives		The Direct Object Marker "-po"	
Дарси 6 Lesson 6 49 Хопа – Хавлй – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued) Grammar Indefinite Nouns 54 Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Reading Xonau xyd 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Вақт – Фасл – Обу хаво Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Рузи кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 74 Кишвархо – Миллатхо – Забоихо Countries – Nationalities – Languages Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Comparatives and Superlatives		Question Particles	
Xona — Хавлй — Бог (идома) Grammar House — Courtyard — Garden (continued) Indefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Xonau xyd Дарси 7 Вақт — Фасл — Обу ҳаво Тime — Seasons — Weather Grammar Reading Pȳзи кории ман Tapcu 8 Kuшварҳо — Миллатҳо — Забоиҳо Grammar Grammar Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives			
Xona – Хавлй – Бог (идома)House – Courtyard – Garden (continued)GrammarIndefinite Nouns54InfinitivesPresent-Future TensePresent-Future TenseSimple Past TenseXonau xyd58Дарси 7Lesson 761Вақт – Фасл – Обу ҳавоTime – Seasons – WeatherGrammarNumbers68ReadingP ўзи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишварҳо – Миллатҳо – ЗабоиҳоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past80Comparatives and Superlatives	Лапси 6	Lesson 6	49
Grammar Indefinite Nouns Infinitives Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Xoнаи худ Бакт — Фасл — Обу хаво Grammar Reading Reading Pyзи кории ман Time — Seasons — Weather Numbers Reading Pyзи кории ман Telegrap 8 Kuusapxo — Миллатхо — Забонхо Grammar Descriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives		House - Courtyard - Garden (continued)	
Present-Future Tense Simple Past Tense Simple Past Tense Reading Appeu 7 Lesson 7 Barm - Φαεπ - Οδυ χαθο Grammar Reading Py ω κοριω μαμ Tapeu 8 Reading Py ω κοριω μαμ Tapeu 8 Reman - Aumer	_ , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	Indefinite Nouns	54
ReadingSimple Past TenseДарси 7Lesson 761Вақт – Фасл – Обу ҳавоTime – Seasons – WeatherGrammarNumbers68ReadingPȳзи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишварҳо – Миллатҳо – ЗабоиҳоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past80Comparatives and Superlatives		Infinitives	
Reading Хонаи худ 58 Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Вақт – Фасл – Обу ҳаво Time – Seasons – Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pȳзи кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 74 Кишварҳо – Миллатҳо – Забоиҳо Countries – Nationalities – Languages Descriptive Past 80 Grammar Comparatives and Superlatives 80		Present-Future Tense	
Дарси 7 Lesson 7 61 Вақт — Фасл — Обу ҳаво Time — Seasons — Weather 68 Grammar Numbers 68 Reading Pȳзи кории ман 72 Дарси 8 Lesson 8 74 Кишварҳо — Миллатҳо — Забонҳо Countries — Nationalities — Languages Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Comparatives and Superlatives		Simple Past Tense	
Дарси 7Lesson 761Вақт – Фасл – Обу ҳавоTime – Seasons – WeatherGrammarNumbers68ReadingPȳзи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишварҳо – Миллатҳо – ЗабоиҳоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesDescriptive Past80GrammarComparatives and Superlatives	Reading	Хонаи худ	58
Вақт – Фасл – Обу ҳавоTime – Seasons – WeatherGrammarNumbers68ReadingРузи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишварҳо – Миллатҳо – ЗабонҳоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past80Comparatives and Superlatives		Lesson 7	61
GrammarNumbers68ReadingРузи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишеархо – Миллатхо – ЗабонхоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives80		Time - Seasons - Weather	
ReadingРузи кории ман72Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишвархо – Миллатхо – ЗабонхоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past80Comparatives and Superlatives		Numbers	68
Дарси 8Lesson 874Кишвархо – Миллатхо – ЗабонхоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past Comparatives and Superlatives80		Рузи кории ман	72
Кишвархо – Миллатхо – ЗабонхоCountries – Nationalities – LanguagesGrammarDescriptive Past80Comparatives and Superlatives	-		74
Grammar Descriptive Past 80 Comparatives and Superlatives			
Comparatives and Superlatives			80
	ar a wannana AMA		

Дарси 9	Lesson 9	86
Узвхои бадан	Parts of the Body	
Grammar	Compound Verbs	89
	Active and Passive Verbs	
	Absolute Future Tense	
Reading	Таъбири хоб	94
•	Беҳтарин аъзо	
Дарси 10	Lesson 10	97
Шахр — Куча	The City – The Street	
Grammar	The Past Participle	102
	Present Continuous Tense	
	Modal Verbs	
Дарси 11	Lesson 11	111
Бозор	Market	
Grammar	Derivational Affixes (continued)	116
	The conditional mood – use of "arap"	
Reading	Сето нон	122
	То ки дигарон хўранд	
Дарси 12	Lesson 12	124
Дар магоза	At the Shop	
Grammar	Narrative Past Tense	131
-	Past Perfect Tense	
Дарси 13	Lesson 13	136
Дар ресторан, ошхона,	At the Restaurant,	
қахвахона, чойхона	Cafe, and Tea-House	
Grammar	More Compound Verbs	140
	More Pronouns	
Reading	Χνдο χοχαд	145
1.00.018	Тарзи пухтани оши палов	
Дарси 14	Lesson 14	149
Дар мехмонхона	In the Hotel	
Grammar	Complex Sentences: Conjunctions	154
Grammer	"Fundamental" and "Causal" Verbs	
Reading	Марги аблахона	157
Дарси 15	Lesson 15	161
царса 13 Идора – Телефон	At the Office – On the Telephone	
Grammar	Exclamations and Words of Emotion	167
Reading	<i>Телефон</i>	171
Дарси 16	Lesson 16	174
дарси 10 Вақти холй – Дар мехмонй	Free Time – Visiting as a Guest	
Grammar	Subordinate Clauses	181
Grammar	Subordinate Clauses of Time	
	The Past Continuous Tense	
Reading	Сахитарин инсон	186
	Lesson 17	188
Hanuardu durmun	At the Doctor's	_00
Дар назди духтур Тибби халий	Folk Medicine	
Тибби халқй Grammar	Subordinate Clauses of Cause	195
Grainnai	Subordinate Clauses of Purpose	
	Subordinate Clauses of Condition	

Reading	$ uu$ $x\bar{y}p\partial e\partial$?	199
C .	Подшох ва фолбин	
	Кū бисёртар?	
Дарси 18	Lesson 18	202
Хайвонот Хайвонот	Animals	
Grammar	Subordinate Clauses of Quantity and	
Oranimai	Degree	207
	Subordinate Clauses of Concession	
D . 11	Захми забон	210
Reading	Боги хайвоноти Душанбе	
W #0	Lesson 19	214
Дарси 19	Holidays - Celebrations - Ceremonies	21.
Идхо – Чашихо – Маросимхо	Holladys - Celebrations - Ceremonies	223
Grammar	Subordinate Clauses of Location	223
	Multiple Complex Sentences	226
Reading	Наврўз	220
	Таронахои наврўзй	
	Арвох	220
Дарси 20	Lesson 20	229
Конун – Сиёсат	Law – Politics	
Муносибатхои байналмилалй	International Relations	
Grammar	Verbal adverb	236
	Direct and Indirect Speech	
Reading	Хикоят (мазмун аз «Гулистон»)	240
Дарси 21	Lesson 21	242
Дарси 21 Саёхат – Табиат	Tourism – Nature	
Grammar	Word Construction	248
Grammar	Descriptive Use of Present-Future Tens	e
D 4!	Искандаркул	252
Reading	Пеканоаркул	255
Answers to Lesson 1 Exercises	Appendixes	
Иловахо	Cities and Regions of Tajikistan	256
Шахру нохияхои Точикистон	The Most Common Tajiki Names	257
Маъмултарин номхои точики	I. Model official letters	260
 Намунаи мактубхои расми 		261
II. Намунаи мактубхои дўстона	II. Model informal letters	264
III. Намунаи табрикномахо	III. Model congratulations	266
IV. Намунаи даъватномахо	IV. Model invitations	267
V. Намунаи эълонхо	V. Model announcements	268
VI. Намунаи таъзияномахо	VI. Model condolences	
VII. Намунаи тавсияномахо	VII. Model recommendations	269
Латифахои точикй	Tajiki Jokes	269
Байту порчахои шеърй	Poetry Selections	272
A Brief Introduction To Tajiki Grammar		
Фонетика	Phonetics	278
Садонокхо	Vowels	278
хамсадохо	Consonants	279
Зада	Stress	280
Баъзе тағйироти овозй	Some Sound Changes	281
Dabse Tarnipern obesh		

x A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

Морфология	Morphology	282
Исм	Nouns	282
	Singular and Plural Nouns	
	Arabic Plurals	
	Indefinite Article and Defining Suffix	
	Nominal Derivational Affixes	
Сифат	Adjectives	286
	Adjectival Derivational Affixes	
•	Nominal Use of Adjectives	
	Compound Nouns and Adjectives	
Шумора	Numbers	289
	Cardinal Numbers	
	Ordinal Numbers	
	Fractions	
	Approximate numbers	
	"Numerators"	
Чонишин	Pronouns	291
	Personal-Possessive Pronouns	
	Pronominal Suffixes	
Феъл	Verbs	293
	Verb Stems	
	Tajiki Verb Structure	
	Participles	
	Verbal Adverbs	
	Verb Conjugation	
	Verb Tenses	
	Imperatives	
	Modal Verbs	
	Active and Passive Verbs	
	Fundamental and Causal Verbs	
Зарф	Adverbs	310
Пешоянду Пасояндхо	Prepositions and Postpositions	312
	Simple prepositions	
	"Izofat" and Compound Nominal Prepositions	
	Compound Nominal Prepositions (without "izofat")	
	Postpositions	
Пайвандакхо	Conjunctions	316
	Coordinate conjunctions	010
	Subordinate conjunctions	
Хиссачахо	Particles	321
Нидохо	Exclamations	322
Tajiki - English Dictionary		323
Acknowledgements		371
-		

OFFICIAL PREFACE

КАЛИДЕ АЗ ГАНЧХОНАИ НИЁКОН

Мардуми точик мақоли хубе дорад: забон донй - чахон донй. Дар ҳақиқат, донистани забон моро бо ин дунёи рангорангу сокинони он аз наздик ошно месозад. Мо хушбахтем, ки имруз кишвари мо низ ба сифати яке аз давлатҳои соҳибистиқлолу комилҳуқуқ аз тарафи оламиён шинохта шудааст ва узви чудонопазири чомеаи чаҳонй мебошад.

Точикон ҳамчун яке аз халқҳои қадимтарини чаҳон соҳиби таърих, фарҳанг, адабиёт ва, умуман, тамаддуни оламшумуланд. Забони точикй забони шеъру адаб, илму ҳунар ва панду масал аст. Аз ин рў, донистани он фақат василаи муошират бо мардуми точик нест, балки он калидест, ки дари ганчинаи суҳани гуҳаррези гузаштагону муосирони моро ба рўйи ҳаводорони забони точикй боз мекунад. Шумо ба воситаи он метавонед бо асрори ҳикмати гуҳаштагон - Рудакиву Фирдавсй, Синову Берунй, Румиву Хайём, Ҳофизу Саъдй, Камолу Чомй, Айниву Турсунзода, Лоҳутиву Гафуров ва садҳо буҳургони дигар ошно гардед. Дар баробари ин, мардуми точик дорои яке аз ганитарин сарчашмаҳои эчодиёти ҳалқ - фолклор мебошад. Афсонаву латифаҳо, рубоиву дубайтиҳо ва сурудҳои маросимй, ки дар байни мардум паҳн гашта, то имруз низ ба таври фаровон истифода мешаванд, сарвати бебаҳои маънавии миллати мо мебошанд.

Басо рамзист, ки китоби «Рахнамои точикй барои навомўзон» барои хаводорони омўзиши забони точикй, ки англисизабону англисидон мебошанд, дар остонаи чашни бошукўхи дахумин солгарди Истиклолияти Точикистон ба табъ мерасад. Аз як тараф, он нишонаи дар макоми расмии давлатй пойдору устувор гардидани забони точикй аст. Имрўз забони точикй дар майдони сиёсату иктисод ва илму фарханги мардуми мо озодонаву устуворона кадам менихад, доираи истифодаи он рўз то рўз васеътар мегардад. Аз тарафи дигар, дар натичаи тахкими пояхои низоми сиёсии давлату давлатдорй ва таъмини хаёти осоишта ва аз баракати ин раванди баргаштнопазир вусъат ёфтани фаьолияти ташкилоту созмонхои гуногуни байналмилалй, теъдоди хавасмандони омўзиши забони точикй торафт меафзояд.

Табъу нашри ин китобро дар остонай чашни Истиклолият ман барои дустдорони забони ширину дилчасти точикй хадяи арзанда мешуморам ва ба хамаи шумо, азизон, дар кушодани дари ганчинай сухан ва сайри боги дилкушой фархангу адаби миллати кадимай точик барори кор мехохам.

Президенти Чумхурии Точикистон

D. PAXMOHOB

TRANSLATION OF THE OFFICIAL PREFACE

A KEY TO THE PREDECESSORS' TREASURE-HOUSE

The Tajik people have a good proverb: "If you get to know a language, you may get to know the world." By learning a language we can truly become closer to the many inhabitants of this world. We are happy that our country is now also known as one of the countries that enjoys independence and full legal rights and is an inseparable member of the world's international community.

As one of the most ancient peoples of the world, the Tajiks possess a great history, culture, literature and, generally, a renowned civilisation. The Tajiki language is a language of poems and prose, of the arts and science, and of advice and proverbs. Therefore, to know Tajiki is not only an instrument for communicating with the Tajik people but, for those who want to learn Tajiki, it is a key with which to open the door to the treasury of the precious words of past and present Tajiks. Through it, you may become acquainted with the profound secrets of our ancestors – Rudaki, Firdausi, Sino, Beruni, Rumi, Khayyam, Hafez, Sa'di, Kamol, Jomi, Aini, Tursunzoda, Lohuti, Ghafurov and hundreds of other great writers. In addition to this, the Tajik people are one of the richest sources of folklore. Stories, jokes, poetry, and ceremonial songs that have spread among people are still frequently used today and are a priceless spiritual commodity of our nation.

It is most appropriate that this "Official Beginners' Guide to Tajiki" for English-speakers who want to learn Tajiki has been published on the threshold of Tajikistan's grand celebration for its tenth anniversary of independence. On the one hand, it is a sign of the consolidation of the Tajiki language in its official status in the country. Today, Tajiki is freely and steadily advancing in the arenas of politics, economics, science, and culture of our people and the extent of its use is increasing every day. On the other hand, the numbers of people wanting to learn Tajiki is constantly increasing as a result of the consolidation of the foundation of the country's political system and its administration, of the provision of a peaceful life and, through the benefits of this irreversible process, of the development of the activity of various international organisations.

I believe the publication of this book on the threshold of the Independence celebrations is a valuable gift for those who love the pleasant and attractive Tajiki language and I wish you all success in your task, dear friends, as you seek to open the door to the treasury of words and walk in the inspiring garden of the ancient Tajik nation's culture and literature.

The President of the Republic of Tajikistan

E.Rahmonov

EDITOR'S PREFACE

"Language is power."

The truth of this aphorism is at least two-fold. Firstly, those individuals who possess certain language skills and are thereby members of a particular speech community have access to information and resources that remain unobtainable by others who lack those same language skills and are consequently excluded from the given speech community. Thus, those individuals with additional language skills wield a power not held by the majority. Secondly, language is inextricably associated with culture and shapes the way in which people think and express ideas. As a result, the introduction of a new language itself has the power to transform the lives of individuals and, ultimately, a society.

For most of the twentieth century, the language of the Tajiks was portrayed as inferior to Russian, the colonial language of the Soviet Union, of which Tajikistan was a part. Following independence, English replaced Russian as the most prestigious language to know. As Tajikistan increasingly establishes and develops relationships with other countries and many international organisations – particularly with those of the international English-speaking community – there is an ever-greater need for English instruction. The Society in Tajikistan for Assistance and Research (STAR) is one of the international organisations involved in Tajikistan in both the teaching of English as a foreign language and the continued professional development of local English teachers. Yet, in recognising the awesome responsibility attached to the empowering of a people with a new language – and all the more so when that language is of such global significance as English – I was delighted for STAR to sponsor the production of this textbook, A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki, and thereby to play a part in promoting the language and culture of the Tajiks.

With Tajikistan's increasing contact with the international community, there are an evergrowing number of embassies, international organisations and joint ventures working in the capital, Dushanbe, and in many other parts of the country. Accordingly, there are an increasing number of expatriates living in Tajikistan who want to learn the Tajiki language. Yet, until recently there has been no textbook about Tajiki to meet the demands of all these expats. All that has been available are some privately disseminated language materials and a couple of Russian-Tajiki-English phrasebooks, which are of limited use and are often inaccurate. So, on the whole, foreigners learn Tajiki through teachers who have all had to prepare their own materials. Thus, for some years there has been a demand for a book of Tajiki lessons; this book seeks to meet that need.

The book evolved out of lessons prepared by the Tajik author during his teaching of Tajiki to foreign diplomats and professionals in various fields. In this way, even before the lessons were brought together in a more systematic fashion, they had been repeatedly revised and their effectiveness had been demonstrated. The following is a summary of the key principles underlying the lessons:

- a topic-based, lexical conversational approach towards language learning;
- recycling of language information to facilitate language acquisition;
- exposure to language forms prior to explanation of those forms to provide opportunities for inductive learning;
- a step-by-step exposure to grammatical forms, based upon their difficulty and relative frequency of use;
- use of authentic language material: an emphasis on the spoken language, as well as description of the literary language.

¹ Another textbook, with an emphasis on the written form of the language, became available in 2001 – "Tajiki Textbook and Reader" by Hillmann, M.C. (2000) Dunwoody Press.

 a balance between literal translation and sociolinguistically equivalent expression has been attempted when both Tajiki and English are given; for instance, not all occurrences of terms of address (such as ακο οτ γκογομ) are represented in the English, such terms being frequently used in Tajiki but much rarer in English.

Each lesson contains the following sections:

- a short commentary in English on the subject around which the lesson has been prepared;
- a key vocabulary list on the lesson's theme:
- dialogues, focussed around the theme of the lesson;
- a grammar section, introducing one or more points of grammar:
- exercises, providing opportunities for controlled practice of the new vocabulary and grammar presented in the lesson;
- many lessons also include proverbs and short texts followed by discussion questions, providing opportunities for freer language practice;
- a quiz, including some items designed to encourage thinking about how to ask and answer questions, and others to promote free language practice.

At the end of the book, in the appendices, there are lists of useful information, examples of formal and informal letters, invitations, recommendations, speeches for congratulations and condolences, and some sample Tajiki jokes and poems, which can be used to gain further insight into the Tajiki culture and mindset, as well as to impress Tajiki friends by quoting them on appropriate occasions! Following these, there is a section explaining the most important aspects of grammar, using simple language and tables. Lastly, at the end of the book there is also a comprehensive Tajiki-English dictionary of all the vocabulary used in this book—this contains over 4500 definitions.

Many learners will find it helpful to work through the book at least a couple of times, initially concentrating on the vocabulary and culture in lessons of greatest relevance to their needs and only later working more deliberately on the grammar system. While the book can be used either with or without a Tajiki language helper, those who are able to study with the assistance of a tutor will find abundant material for further language practice. For instance, in the commentaries, it has only been possible to present a brief outline of some aspects of Tajiki culture. Students could thus select any of these and make it a project to find out more details. Again, although an explanation of some of the proverbs has been provided, when the way in which they might be used is not necessarily obvious, discussion about each of these, the context in which they might be used, and the cultural norms, customs and beliefs assumed could fill many fruitful hours with a language helper. Consequently, although the book has been designed for beginners, those who wish to gain fluency in the language will find ample opportunity to take the language further.

Dr John Hayward
Director
Society in Tajikistan for Assistance and Research (STAR)
Dushanbe, Tajikistan, March 2001

Дарси 1

Lesson 1

Алифбои точикй Овозхои хоси точикй Транскрипсия – Зада The Tajiki Alphabet Special Tajiki Sounds Transcription – Stress

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

The Tajiki language is one of the official languages of the Republic of Tajikistan, located in the Central Asia. As a member of the Iranian group of languages, Tajiki belongs to the family of Indo-European languages.

From the start of the tenth century until the 1920s, Tajiks used the Farsi script, which is essentially based on the Arabic alphabet. In 1929 the Farsi script was exchanged for a Latin-based script, but not for long, as in 1940 a new Tajiki alphabet was accepted, based on the Russian Cyrillic script. In recent years, the alphabet has undergone a number of small changes. Firstly, a number of Russian letters have been lost from the alphabet and equivalent Tajiki letters have appeared in their place; and, secondly, the order of letters in

the alphabet has also been revised a little.

Tajiki, Farsi in Iran, and Dari in Afghanistan are very similar. The Persian language went through three periods of development: Ancient Persian, Middle Persian and New Persian. New Persian developed in the 9-10th centuries, in the time of the Samanid Dynasty. The Samanid State enclosed a very wide territory including most of Central Asia, Iran, and Afghanistan, with its capital in Bukhara. During that period, the state's official language was called Parsii Dari. In the Gaznavid Dynasty that followed, the state's territory was extended to Pakistan and Northern India. As a result, the Persian language was spread across this area too. Persian remained an official language in this region during subsequent dynasties and states (Karakhanids, Gurids, Ghengis and Timurids) until the 16th century when this region was divided into separate states: Iran, Afghanistan, and the Shaibanids State (in Central Asia). After this division the differences in language among the peoples of these regions appeared. Even after the 16th century, when the Uzbeks started to govern in Central Asia, Persian (Taiiki) continued as an official language. In the subsequent centuries, particularly in the 19th and 20th centuries, Farsi, Dari and Tajiki became differentiated, largely as the result of the colonial policy of Western countries. Consequently, famous authors of Farsi literature, such as Rudaki, Firdausi, Sino, Beruni, Forobi, Khayyam, Rumi, Sadi, Hafez, Bedil, and Kamoli Khujandi are also claimed as Tajik authors. However, for all the similarities between Farsi and Tajiki today, there are also certain differences with respect to particular historical, political, industrial, and cultural situations.

Tajiki is not only spoken in Tajikistan. In Afghanistan, Tajiks are the second largest people group after the Pushtun. There are also large groups of Tajiki-speakers living in the Tajik regions of Uzbekistan—Samarkand, Bukhara, the Ferghana valley, and the Surkhondaryo and Sirdaryo districts—and also in some parts of Kirghizstan and Kazakstan.

Tajiki is one of the group of "analytical" languages: that is, it uses neither gender nor case. Instead, grammatical relationships are indicated through prepositions and postpositions.

The Tajiki alphabet has 35 letters and there is a very close relationship between the written letters and their sounds. The lengthening or shortening of sounds usually makes no difference to the meaning of the word: every letter usually has a unique sound. So, in the

Lesson 1: The Alphabet 3

process of learning Tajiki, it is not important to have an additional transcription, and once you have learnt to read the Tajiki alphabet, you will be able to read Tajiki texts with ease. Like English letters, Tajiki letters can be printed or hand-written, capitalised or small.

One of the most important features of Tajiki is the coexistence of vastly different variants of the language: on the one hand, of literary $(a\partial a\delta \bar{u})$ and colloquial $(zy\phi myz\bar{y}\bar{u})$ forms, and, on the other, of different dialects (locally, naxya, and regionally, meea). The numerous Tajiki dialects can be divided into two broad groups, as defined by general shared characteristics: northern, and central-southern. The northern group of dialects includes the Sughd district (formerly Leninabad) and Tajik areas of Uzbekistan (the Ferghana valley, Samarkand, and Bukhara), while the central and southern dialects are found in the remaining parts of Tajikisan. People in the autonomous region of Badakhshan, speak Pamiri languages, which are included among the Eastern group of Iranian languages and are completely different from the Tajiki language. People from this region are fluent in both their mother tongue and in Tajiki, but speak Tajiki with an accent.

АЛИФБОИ ТОЧИКЙ

THE TAJIKI ALPHABET

The complete alphabet is presented in table 1.1. Points of particular note are mentioned below.

Tajiki Vowels

In Tajiki there are six vowels: a, e(y), $u(\bar{u})$, o, y, \bar{y} . The ones deserving particular comment are as follows:

The vowel E: This letter has two functions in Tajiki; it represents the vowel /e/ and the consonant+vowel /ye/.

/e/: This vowel is similar to the vowel in the English word bed. This sound only occurs after a consonant, in the middle and at the end of words:

 $\partial ep / der / - late$

марде /marde/ – a man

ce /se/ - three

ceб /seb/ – an apple

/ye/: At the beginning of a word or after a vowel, the vowel /e/ is preceded by the consonant sound /y/, forming the sound /ye/:

Epesan /yerevan/ - Yerevan

donoe donoyel - a clever person

The vowel 9: This letter is a variant of the letter e, appearing only at the start of a word and is always pronounced like a medial or final e:

элак /elak/ - sieve

Эрон /eron/ – Iran

The vowel \bar{u} : The vowel \bar{u} (called *i-yi zadanok* in Tajiki) is the stressed version of the vowel u/i/a and is only used at the end of a word:

бародарй /barodari/ – brotherhood

мохи /mohi/ – fish

The vowel \bar{Y} $\bar{n}ij$: The vowel \bar{y} does not exist in English. This sound is a characteristic of literary Tajiki and of northern dialects. The sound is not found in central and southern dialects and people in these parts substitute it with the y/u/s sound. It is similar to, although slightly lower than, the German " \bar{u} " and, in English, somewhat similar to the " $\bar{i}r$ " sound in the words first and girl. To produce it, the lips should be rounded, as though to pronounce " \bar{o} ", while making the English schwa sound, \star , as found in "her":

∂vcm /düst/ - friend

zyum /güsht/ - meat

Table 1.1 The Tajiki alphabet, together with the name of the letters, their transcription, and an example of an English equivalent, where possible.

Printed	Hand- written	Name of letter	Sound (transcription)	Similar English Sound
				like a in hat;
A a	Aa	a	/a/	like u in run
Бб	T 1	be	/Ъ/	like b in but
Вв	B 6	ve	/v/	like v in <i>vein</i>
Γr	T.	ge	/g/	like g in good
Fr	\mathcal{F}_{i}	ghe	/gh/	{no English equivalent}
Дд	Ďg	de	/d/	like d in day
	-		/e/,	like e in egg
Еe	\mathcal{E}_{c}	ye	/ye/	like ye in yet
Ëë	É ë	уо	/yo/	like yo in yonder
жж	M no	zhe	/zh/	like s in pleasure
Зз	33	ze	/z/	like z in zoo
	-		/i/,	like v in verv
Ии	U u	i	/i:/	like ee in meet
й	$ar{u}$	i-yi zadanok	/i:/	like ee in see
Йй	Ü ü	yot	/y/	like y in yacht or boy
Кк	\mathcal{K}_{κ}	ke	/k/	like k in book
Κк	Ж, 14	qe	/q/	{no English equivalent}
Лл	As	le	/ľ/	like l in late
Мм	M. m	me	/m/	like <i>m</i> in <i>man</i>
Нн	\mathcal{H}_n	ne	/n/	like n in name
0 0	O a	0	/o/	like o in hot
	* *	U	101	like au in taught
Пп	\mathcal{T}_n	pe	/p/	like <i>p</i> in <i>pen</i>
Рp	\mathscr{S}_p	re	/r/	like r in room
Сс	Ć.	se	/s/	like s in sun
Тт	M m	te	/t/	like t in table
Уу	${\mathcal Y}_{\mathcal Y}$	u	/u/	like <i>ou</i> in <i>you</i>
Σ̈́y	$\mathscr{Y}_{ar{\mathcal{Y}}}$	ü	/ü/	like ir in girl, first
Фф	Φ°φ	fe	/f/	like f in foot
Хx	96 x	khe	/kh/	like ch in Scottish lock
Χχ	ЭС, «,	he	/h/	like h in home
Чч	964	che	/ch/	like <i>ch</i> in <i>chess</i>
प्प	9/4	je	/j/	like j in job
Шш	Ul ui	she	/sh/	like <i>sh</i> in <i>she</i>
ъ	ъ	alomati sakta	<i>l</i> °1	{glottal stop (a pause or break
Ээ	9,	е	/e/	like e in end
Юю	H 10	yu	/yu/	like you in youth
Яя	Ях	ya	/ya/	like ya in yak

Note: when italicised, some printed letters more closely resemble their corresponding handwritten forms, e.g. ∂ (π) and m (π).

Other Tajiki vowels are similar to English vowels:

A = [in transcription it is always written a]

"a" as in the words hat, manner; e.g. baxm /bakht/ - luck, fortune;

"u" as in the words but, run, summer; e.g. xona /khona/ - house; room.

H = [in transcription it is written i (yi following a vowel)]

"i" as in the words in, his; e.g. китоб /kitob/ - book; caup /sayr/ - trip, walk

"ee" as in the words meet, see; e.g. dun /din/ - religion.

O = [in transcription it is always written o]

"o" as in the words dog, job; e.g. δος /bogh/ - garden.

Y = [in transcription it is always written u]

"oo" or "u" as in the words foot, put; e.g. ymed /umed/ - hope;

"oo" as in the words food, too; e.g. xyδ/khub/ – good.

The letters \ddot{e} , 10, 18 consist of two sounds, the consonant \ddot{u} and a vowel:

 $\vec{E} = \vec{u} + o \left[\frac{1}{v} + \frac{1}{o} \right] = \frac{1}{v} o = \frac{1}{v} o$

 $\mathcal{A} = \tilde{u} + a \left[\frac{1}{y} + \frac{1}{a} \right] = \frac{1}{ya} : \Re \left[\frac{1}{yak} - one \right]$

 $IO = \ddot{u} + v \left[\frac{1}{v} + \frac{1}{u} \right] = \frac{1}{vu}$: $IO non \frac{1}{vunon} - Greece$.

Taiiki Consonants

Most Tajiki consonants have English equivalents. Only a few of the Tajiki consonants do not exist in standard English dialects. These are as follows:

The consonant F/ghl: This is a voiced consonant made by exhaling while putting the back part of the tongue against the back part of the palate. It is like the sound made when gargling. For those who speak or have studied French, it sounds like the French "r":

nae3 /naghz/ - good, nice 0203 /oghoz/ - beginning, start

The consonant K /q/: This consonant sound is produced by pressing the back part of the tongue against the uvula. It may be helpful to begin by trying to produce the /k/ sound as far back in the throat as possible. For those who speak or have studied Arabic, it sounds like the Arabic D:

калам /galam/ - pencil

барқ /barq/ – light, electricity

The consonant X /kh/: This is a voiceless consonant made by exhaling while putting the back part of the tongue against the back part of the palate. For those who speak or have studied German or Russian, it is similar to the German "ch" or Russian "x", though usually even more guttural:

хоб /khob/ – dream; sleep

maxc /shakhs/ - person

The glottal stop B //: The letter v - "аломати сакта" ("the glottal stop mark," as in English "hattrick") - following a vowel makes it sound a little longer and then abruptly cut off:

(compare: 6ad /bad/ - bad) 6and /ba'd/ = /baad/ - after

Following a consonant or at the end of the word it designates a slight pause or a break in pronunciation:

чумъа /jum'a/ – Friday

шамъ /sham'/ – candle

The following characters should be particularly noted, so as not to confuse them with the similar-looking English letters:

Tajiki Be = English "V": zoe |gov| - cow;

Taiiki $H \mu = English$ "N": non / non / - bread;

Taiiki P p = English "R": $p\bar{y}3 / r\ddot{u}z / - day$;

Tajiki Cc = English "S": con/sol/-year;

Tajiki hand-written Tm, "m" = English "T": $\partial \bar{y}cm$ /dust/ - friend.

Tajiki X x - is not the English "X", but /kh/: xy6 /khub/ - good;

Care should also be taken not to confuse the italic printed letters δ (\mathcal{I}) and δ (\mathcal{E}).

(For more information about Tajiki phonetics, see the section "A Brief Introduction to Tajiki Grammar" at the end of the book.)

ТРАНСКРИПСИЯ

TRANSCRIPTION

Tajiki sounds are very closely related to the letters used to transcribe them. Therefore, it is not necessary to have a separate transcription of words when learning Tajiki. Throughout the rest of the book, transcription has only been used when there is a difference between how a word is written and how it is usually pronounced. For such situations the following use of vowels should be noted, so that no confusion arises with the alternative way they are pronounced in English.

O - this is always pronounced "o" as in the words office or pot;

A - this is always pronounced "a" or "u" as in the words ran or run;

Y - this is always pronounced "oo" as in the words good or food.

One exception has been made with respect to usual transcription rules and that concerns the name of the people (moyuk), language (moyuku) and country (Toyukucmon). According to strict rules of transcription, these should be written Tojik, Tojiki and Tojikistan, respectively. However, when these words were only known to the west through their erroneous Russian transcriptions and word endings, these were transformed into Tadzhik, Tadzhik and Tadzhikstan. While many Westerners continue to refer to the language as "Tajik." the variant "Tajiki" is here used both for the sake of clarity and in recognition that it is the preferred variant in official documents. So, the name of the people, language and country are transcribed as Tajik, Tajiki and Tajikistan, respectively. It should also be noted that place names from other countries that have established or accepted transcriptions in English have also been followed; e.g. Samarkand, Bukhara, and Tashkent (in Uzbekistan) for Самарканд. Бухоро and Тошканд.

3AIIA

STRESS

The position of stress in Tajiki is very regular. In all Tajiki words, except for verbs, stress falls on the last syllable of words. If a suffix is added to a word, the stress falls on the suffix:

бародар /baro'dar/ - brother бача /ba'cha/ - child

⇒ δαρο∂αρū /baroda'ri/ - brotherhood;

⇒ бачагон /bacha'gon/ - children

⇒ бачагона /bachago'na/ - for a child; child's.

In verbs, stress usually falls on the first syllable:

гирифтам / giriftam/ - I took;

dvpvxmū /'furukhti/ - You sold.

As well as derivational suffixes and prefixes in Tajiki, there are also inflectional suffixes, which show person and number (1st, 2nd or 3rd; singular or plural) or connect words. These inflectional suffixes are never stressed:

коргар /kor'gar/ – worker китоб /ki'tob/ – book

⇔ ман коргарам /man kor'garam/ – *I am a worker*:

⇒ κυποδαμ /ki'tobam/ – my book;

The indefinite article and defining suffix for nouns, -e, is never stressed: $\partial vxmap$ /dukh'tar/ - the girl \Rightarrow dyxmape /dukh'tare/ - a girl.

Additional information about stress is provided in some of the grammar sections of

(For more information about stress, see the section "A Brief Introduction to Tajiki Grammar" at the end of the book.)

МАШКХОИ ФОНЕТИКЙ

PHONETIC EXERCISES

- 1. Read and transcribe the following words into English characters:
 - а. дер, себ, се, Ереван, Эрон, элак, марде, шахсе;
 - b. бародарй, мохй, дустй (friendship);
 - с. дуст, гушт, пуст (skin), муй (hair), руй (face);
 - d. дарё, дунё (world), ёрй, Ёдгор {a man's name}, як, соя (shadow), ҳамсоя (neighbour), Юнон, сеюм (third), Юнус {a man's name};
 - е. хоб, шахс, хона, ях (ice), бахт;
 - f. нагз, огоз, бог, Faiop {a man's name};
 - g. барқ, қалам, қошуқ (spoon), қанд (sweets, candy);
 - h. баъд, чумъа, шамъ, Саъдй {a man's name}.
- 2. Write the following words in Tajiki:
 - a. Male names:
 - Daler, Bahodur, Aziz, Eraj, Dilovar, Parviz, Sharaf, Hamdam, Khurshed, Firüz, Qurbon, Shührat, Iskandar, Manuchehr, Bakhtiyor.
 - b. Female names:
 - Farzona, Zarrina, Farangis, Gulchehra, Dilorom, Ganjina, Saodat, Mahina, Münisa, Firüza, Tahmina, Shahlo, Nargis.

To check your answers, see page 255.

Дарси 2

Lesson 2

Муроциат Шиносой

Forms of Address Getting Acquainted

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

As in all languages, there are various ways of addressing people in Tajiki. The most important of these are the two forms of address for the second person ("you") – formal (showing respect) and informal (general use) – these are the words uymo and my respectively. Ty is usually used for the singular and uymo for the plural. However, uymo is also used for the second person singular to show respect and in official affairs. In relationships between friends, peers, close work colleagues, and also when addressing younger people, the pronoun my is used; for addressing older people, guests, officials, leaders and, more generally, anyone who should be shown respect, the pronoun uymo is used. When uymo is used to show respect to a single person, it is capitalised in writing. The third person plural is also often used instead of the third person singular when talking about someone for whom one has a lot of respect, such as one's parents, boss, or teachers.

In colloquial Tajiki, there is just one way of saying hello, irrespective of the time of day, the expression "canom" or "accanomy aneŭκym" being used throughout the day. However, in literary language and in some official situations, the following forms are also used: "cyōx δa xaūp" – good morning, "pȳs δa xaūp" – good afternoon, and "mom δa xaūp" – good evening. Another cultural difference in social rituals used for greetings is that, whereas in English these tend to be limited to just one question about the health (e.g. "How are you?") in Tajiki it is normal to ask at least three or four questions about the health and family, e.g. "Шумо чū хел? Саломапицтон чū хел? Хуб хастед?"

Almost all Tajiki names mean something. They include both those that were originally Tajiki names and also others that were originally Arabic names. Most of the Arabic names are based on characteristics of God, e.g. Paxum ("compassion") and Paxmon ("forgiver"). Other names derived from Arabic contain the initial root "Abd" ("Abdy") ("slave; servant") or the final root "onnox" ("ynnox") ("Allah," "god") or "dun" ("religion"); e.g. Abdypaxum ("slave of the compassionate one"), Φαϊσγηπο ("grace of God"), and Φαxρυddun ("pride of religion"). Others are taken from the names of months in the Islamic lunar calendar! – e.g. Caфap, Payab, and Pamason – and are usually given to boys born in these months. If a girl is born in one of these months, the root "mox" ("month; moon") or "zyn" ("flower") is added to the end of the name of the month – e.g. Payabmox and Caфapzyn.

There are various traditions surrounding the giving of names. For instance, twins boys are often called Xacan and $Xyce\bar{u}n$, and twin girls $\mathcal{D}omuma$ and $3\bar{y}xpo$. If non-identical twins are born, one of each sex, then depending on which was born first they are often called Xacan and $3\bar{y}xpo$, or $\mathcal{D}omuma$ and $Xyce\bar{u}n$. If a child is born with a lot of birthmarks ("xon"), it might be named Xon, $Xon\deltao\bar{u}$, Xondop, or Xonuasap (if a boy), or Xonndona (if a girl). If it has a red birthmark, one of the following names might be chosen: Hop, $Hop\deltao\bar{u}$, $Hop\delta\bar{u}$

See commentary for lesson seven.

years to have a child and finally have one, they might choose the name $Xy\partial o\bar{u}\partial o\partial$, $Xy\partial o\bar{u}nazap$, or $Xy\partial o\bar{u}\delta ep\partial\bar{u}$. If a child is born with an additional body part (e.g. a sixth finger) then it might be named $3u\bar{e}\partial ynno$ (if a boy) or $3u\bar{e}\partial a$ (if a girl). Some names can be given to a boy or girl; e.g. $Hcma\partial$. Paguan. \bar{y}_{nmac} , and Hloxun.

In recent years, older original Tajiki names have become more popular and Arabic names are less frequently chosen. A first child is usually named by a grandparent, parents choosing the names of future children. Another common Tajiki custom is that a new-born shouldn't be given the same name as a relative. Sometimes, in memory of a recently deceased relative (particularly a grandparent), their name may be given to a newborn child, in which case the child is often addressed as "UVyno" rather than "uv" even when they are small and may be called " $\delta o\delta o$ " ("Grandad"), " $\delta u\delta u$ " ("Grandad"), and so on, by their immediate family.

People's names appear in two forms in Tajikistan: national (traditional) and Russian. In the national form, the person's first name usually comes first and then the father's name or ancestral name. The father's (ancestral) name is usually formed by the addition of a suffix to the father's name, e.g.:

-й: Чалол Икромії, Азиз Азимії:

-зода: Боқй Рахим<u>зода</u>, Мирзо Турсун<u>зода</u>;

-nyp (for men): Мухиддин Олимпур; and,

-духт (for women): Парвина Салимдухт.

Some first names and father's names follow each other without change: e.g. Рахим Цалил, Хаким Карим.

In the Russian form for names there are three parts: first name, father's name, and surname (family name). The father's name takes the suffix -oeuu or -eeuu for men. For instance, if the first name is Canum and the father's name is Kapum, this would become Canum Kapumoeuu. The father's name for women takes the suffix -oeua or -eeua. So, if the first name is 3amupa and the father's name Kapum, this would be 3amupa Kapumoeua.

The surname (family name) is the ancestral name and is usually formed from the ancestral name (of the father, grandfather, or great-grandfather) with the suffix -08, -e8 (for men), -08a, or -e8a (for women): e.g. Hacum E060e8, Hasupa E060e8a, Eaxmuëp Kaiomos, Mynuca Kaiomosa.

Sometimes in addressing someone the full name is used, starting with the first name, then the father's name, and lastly the surname: e.g. Шариф Каримович Асадов, Салима Каримовиа Асадова. However, in official documents, the surname comes first, then the first name and, after that, the father's name: e.g. Асадов Шариф Каримович, Асадова Салима Каримовиа.

In official forms of address, usually just the first name and father's name are used: e.g. Эрач Азимович, Фарангис Азимовна. The titles чаноб and хонум are sometimes used in formal settings for men and women respectively. When addressing peers, friends, etc., just the first name is used. Sometimes, to show respect to elders, the words ακο / ακα (for men) and ana (for women) is added to their name: e.g. Ακο Καρим / Καρим-ακα, Салима-ана. With younger people, the words γκο / γκα are used (for men), or else the suffix -γοη is added to their name: e.g. Απυγοη, 3εδυγοη. In colloquial Tajiki, the suffix -xοη is also used with women's names: e.g. Οπимахоη. Салимахоη.

Many women's names are formed by adding the suffix -a to men's names: e.g. Xaфuз-Xaфuзa, Шариф-Шарифа, Aзuз-Aзuзa, Xypued-Xypueda, Умед-Умеда. Whenever you hear the /a/ sound at the end of a name, you know it's a woman's name. Lists of common men and women's names can be found in the appendices.

ЛУГАТ

VOCABULARY2

Салом!	Hi!	Салом алейкум!	Hello!
Accaлому алейкум! /assalom aleykum/	Hello!	Субх ба хайр! ³ /sub ba khay/	Good morning!
Рўз ба хайр! ³	Good afternoon!	Шом ба хайр! ³	Good evening!
Шаб ба хайр! ³ Шаби хуш!	Good night! Good night!	Хоби нагз бинед!	Good night! / Sweet dreams!4
Аз дидани Шумо шодам! ³	Good to see you!5	Ман хам.	Me too / Good to see you too.
Хурсандам.	Good to see you!		•
Шумо чй хел? / Чй хел Шумо?	How are you?	Шумо нагз-мӣ? / Нагз-мӣ Шумо?	How are you?
Ту чй хел?	How are you?	Ту нагз-мй?	How are you?6
Саломатиатон чй хел?	How are you? ⁷	Xамааш нагз. /Hamash naghz/	Everything's fine.
нағз / хуб	fine, good	бад	bad
бисёр нагз/хуб мешавад /meshad/	very well, very good all right	бад не	not bad
Хайр! /Khay/	Bye!	То пагох!	See you tomorrow!
То боздид! / То дидан!	See you!	Худо хофиз!	Goodbye! God bless!
Рахмат! (Ташаккур!) ⁸	Thank you!	Рахмати калон! /	Thank you very
(ташаккур:) ⁵ Намеарзад!	Not at all. /	Хазор рахмат!	Don't mention it. /
тамсарзад:	Don't mention it.	Саломат бошед.	No problem.
Мебахшед.	Excuse me.	Мебахшй.	Excuse me.
(Бубахшед.)	[Шумо form]	(Бубахш.)	[my form]
Хеч гап не.	That's all right.	(Dyoaxiii.)	[my joint]
Мумкин?	May I?	Мархамат!	Please! (when offering
Ха (Бале)	Yes	- 1. Zaprania I	something)
He	No	Албатта.	Of course. /
Майлаш.	OK. / All right.		Certainly.
ман	I	Мо	we
ту	you (singular)	шумо9	you (plural)
ӯ/вай ¹⁰	he, she	онхо	they
ин	it / this	ОН	that
аст	is		

² Note: definitions given in each lesson's vocabulary list are not necessarily exhaustive but only relate to how the word is used in the lesson. Full definitions for how words are used throughout the book can be found in the Tajiki-English dictionary at the back of the book.

³ Literary form.

⁴ Literal translation is: "Have a nice dream."

⁵ Literally, "I'm glad to see you."

⁶ First forms (чй хел) are southern and central dialect; second forms (нагз-мй) are northern dialect.

⁷ Literally, "How's your health?"

⁸ Alternatives shown in parentheses are literary forms.

⁹ When capitalised, Шумо is also used for "you (singular)" to show respect.

¹⁰ There is no gender distinction in Tajik pronouns, both \bar{y} and $a\bar{a}\bar{u}$ being used for both "he" and "she." \bar{y} is the more literary form. Ba \bar{u} , but not \bar{y} , is also used for "it."

- I'm fine too, thanks.

- Likewise. How are you?

- Fine thanks, and you?

- Goodbye (my friend)!

- I'm glad that I saw you!

- Me too. How are you?

- Good, thanks. And you?

- Hello, Khursheda. Good to see vou!

- Good afternoon, Salim Karimovich.

- Good afternoon, Umed Saidovich.

- Bye (my friend)!

- Hello, Nigina.

- Not had.

- Bve!

- Bve!

муаллим	(any) teacher	хонанда / талаба	pupil	
(fem.: муаллима)	~	(fem.: толиба)		
устод	(one's own) teacher	шогирд	student; disciple	
донишҷӯ	student	хамкор	colleague	
дўст / рафиқ	friend	дугона	friend (fem.)11	
ц ў ра	friend (masc.) ¹¹	į		
Номи Шумо чй? (/	Исми Шумо чӣ?)	What's your name?		
Номи ту чи?		What's your name?		
Номи ў чй?		What's his/her name?	?	
Номи ман (аст).		My name's		
Номи ў (аст).		His/Her name's		
Номи Шумо Азиз?		Is your name Aziz?		
Ҳа, номи ман Азиз.		Yes, my name's Aziz.		
Не, номи ман Азим.		No, my name's Azim	•	
Насаби [/ Фамилияи] ¹² Шумо/ту чй?		What's your surname	?	
Насаби [/ Фамилияи] ман (аст).		My surname is		
Шинос шавед:		Let me introduce you	::	
Биёед /biyoyed/ шинос шавем.		Literally: "Let's get of	acquainted;"	
/ Биёед шинос мец	іавем.	but equivalent to, "	We've not met."	
Хеле мамнунам. / Х	еле шодам.	Nice to meet you.		
Ман ҳам.		Nice to meet you too		
Ин кй? / Ин кас ¹³ кй	?	Who is that?		
Ин дўсти ман.		He is my friend.		
Ин кас дугонаи ман		She's my friend.		
Нафахмидам.		I didn't understand.	·	
Ман забони точикиј	ро меомузам.	I am learning Tajiki.		
Илтимос, охиста гаг	т занед.	Please, speak more slowly.		
Такрор күнед.		Please say that again.	•	

СЎХБАТХО

DIALOGUES

1. Conversation between two colleagues or acquaintances of opposite sex:

 Салом алейкум, Рахмон! 	– Hello, Rahmon.
Салом алейкум, Гулшан!	– Hello, Gulshan.
– Шумо чй хел?	– How are you?
– Нағз, рахмат. Шумо чй?	- Good, thanks. And you?
– Ман хам нагз.	– I'm fine too.
– Хайр!	- Goodbye!
– Хайр!	– Goodbye!

2. Conversation between two men who are good friends:

– Салом, Эрач!	– Hi, Eraj.
- Салом, Искандар!	– Hi, Iskandar

- Ту чй хел? Нагз-мй? - How are you? (Are you well?)

- Мешад¹⁴. Ту чӣ? - I'm all right. And you?

– Рахмат, бисёр нағз.	- Very well, thanks.
5. Conversation between a Tajik and	d a foreigner of approximately the same age:
– Сапом Чон!	- Hella John

4. Conversation between an employee and his boss or between two elderly people:

– Салом, Чон! - Hello, John. - Салом, Асомиддин! - Hello, Asomiddin. - Чон, Шумо чй хел? - John, how are you? - Ташаккур, нагз. Шумо чй хел? - Fine, thanks. And you? - Рахмат, хамааш нағз. - Everything's good, thanks.

- Хайр, Худо хофиз! - Goodbye! - То боздил! - See vou!

3. Conversation between two women who are good friends:

- Салом, Хуршеда! Аз дидани ту шодам!

- Руз ба хайр, Салим Каримович!

- Салом алейкум, Умед Саидович!

- Шодам, ки Шуморо дидам!

- Ташаккур, нагз. Шумо чй?

- Ман хам. Шумо чй хел?

Рахмат, бисёр нагз.

- Ман хам нагз. Рахмат.

Хайр чура!15

- Салом, Нигина!

- Ман хам. Чй хел ту?

- Нагз, рахмат. Ту чй?

- Хайр, дугоначон!16

Хайр!

– Бал не.

Хайр!

6. Conversation between two people, one of whom is older than the other [northern dialect]:

- Салом, ако-Ином!17 - Hello Inom. - Салом, Муродчон!18 - Hello, Murodjon. - Шумо нагз-мй? - Are you well? - Ха, рахмат. Ту чй? - Yes, thanks. And you?

- Нагз, ако, рахмат, - Fine, thanks.

- Хайр, укочон, ба хама салом гў. - Bye. Say "hi" to everyone for me.

- Хайр! - Bye!

7. Requesting permission to make a phone call: - Мебахшед, занг задан мумкин?¹⁹ - Excuse me. Can I use your phone?

- Мархамат. - Go ahead. - Рахмат. - Thank you.

8. Asking a superior for permission (e.g. student and teacher; employee and supervisor):

а. - Салом алейкум, устод! Даромадан - Good morning, teacher. May I come in? мумкин?

¹¹ Ayzona is used between women only and ψȳρa between men only, whereas δȳcm and ραφμκ are used both between same sex friends and between the sexes; $pa\phi u\kappa$ is more formal than $\partial \bar{y}cm$.

¹² The alternative, фамилия, is a Russian word and is only used in colloquial Tajiki.

¹³ Kac is used to show respect.

¹⁴ Memad is the spoken form of memacad.

¹⁵ Ψypa is the spoken form used between men for addressing a δycm - "a friend."

¹⁶ Дугоначон is the polite form used between women for addressing a дугона - "a friend."

¹⁷ Ako - literally meaning "older brother," this is used to show respect to older men (see the commentary for further

^{18 -}qon - this is the polite form used particularly when addressing younger people (see the commentary for further

¹⁹ Alternatively, one can ask, "як занг занам?" ог "телефон кунам?"

- Мархамат, дароед.

- Ташаккур.

b. – Салом алейкум, Махмуд Шарипович! – Hello, Mahmud Sharipovich. Can I come Ларомадан мумкин?

Албатта, мархамат.

Ташаккур.

9.

– Мебахшед, муаллим, як дакика берүн – Excuse me, teacher, can I leave for a бароям мумкин?

Ха, майлаш.

Рахмат.

b. – Мебахшед, баромадан мумкин?

- Мархамат.

10. Apologising:

- Мебахшед. / Бубахшед.

- Хеч гап не.

11. Meeting people:

- Салом алейкум! Биёед шинос шавем: Номи ман Заррина. Номи Шумо чй?

- Номи ман Наргис.

- Хеле мамнунам! – Ман хам.

12.

- Салом алейкум! Биёед шинос мешавем: Ман Сафар Ализода. Номи Шумо чй?

- Номи ман Фируза Рачабй.

- Аз шиносой бо Шумо шодам.

- Ман хам.

- Салом, Латиф! Ту чй хел?

- Салом. Носир. Ман нагз. ту чй?

ин дусти ман. Номаш Хабиб.

- Салом, Хабиб. Номи ман Латиф.

- Хеле мамнунам, Латиф.

- Ман хам.

14.

- Комрон, ин дусти ту?

- Ха, ин дусти ман.

- Номаш чй? - Номаш Карим.

15.

Ин кас кй?

- Ин кас хамкори мо.

- Номашон чй?

Собир Рахимович.

- Yes, come in.

- Thank vou.

in?

- Yes, of course.

- Thank you.

minute?

- Yes. OK.

- Thank you.

- Excuse me, may I leave?

- Yes. of course.

- Excuse me. / Sorry.

- No problem. / That's all right.

- Hello. I don't think we've met. My name's Zarrina. What's vours?

- My name's Nargis {female}.

- Very nice to meet you.

- Nice to meet you too.

- Hello, We haven't met. I'm Safar Alizoda. What's your name?

- My name is Firüza Rajabi.

- Nice to meet you.

- Nice to meet you too.

- Hi. Latif. How are vou?

- Hi. Nosir. I'm fine. And vou?

- Рахмат, ман хам нагз. Латиф, шинос шав: - Thanks. I'm fine too. Latif, let me introduce my friend. His name's Habib.

- Hi, Habib. My name's Latif.

- Nice to meet you, Latif.

- Nice to meet you too.

- Komron, is this your friend?

- Yes he is

- What's his name?

- His name is Karim

- Who's that?

- That's our colleague.

- And what's his name? - Sobir Rahimovich.

16.

- Салом, Чамшел! Чй хел Шумо?

Салом, Парвина! Ман нагз, Шумо чй?

Рахмат, бал не.

Парвина, ин кас кӣ?

- Мархамат, шинос шавед: ин кас дугонаи ман - Рухшона.

- Бисёр номи зебо. Салом, Рухшона.

- Салом, Чамшед. Аз шиносой бо Шумо шодам.

- Ман хам.

- Хайр, Чамшел,

- Хайр, Худо хофиз!

- Салом, бачахо! Ман муаллими шумо. Номи ман Сулаймон Пулодй. Номи Шумо чи?

- Номи ман Парвиз.

- Номи Шумо чй. лухтари нагз?

- Номи ман Азиза.

Бисёр хуб.

- Ассалому алейкум! Номи Шумо Ричард?

- Ха, номи ман Ричард.

- Ман муаллими Шумо. Номи ман Камолиддин Шохимардонов.

- Мебахшед, нафахмидам. Илтимос, такрор кунед.

- Албатта. Номам Камолилдин. Насаби ман Шохимардонов. Ман муаллими забони точикии Шумо.

- Рахмат. Мамнунам.

- Hello, Jamshed. How are you?

- Hello, Parvina, I'm fine, And vou?

- Not bad, thanks.

- Parvina, who's this?

- Let me introduce you: this is my friend, Rukhshona.

- Oh, that's a pretty name. Hi Rukhshona.

- Hello, Jamshed. Nice to meet vou.

- Nice to meet vou too.

- Goodbye, Jamshed!

- Bve. see vou.

- Good morning, children. I am your teacher. My name is Sulaymon Pulodi... What is vour name?

- My name's Parviz.

- And what's your name, little girl?

– My name's Aziza.

- Great

- Good morning. Is your name Richard?

- Yes, my name's Richard.

- I'm your teacher. My name's Kamoliddin Shohimardonov

- I'm sorry, I didn't understand, Please, can you say that again?

- Of course. My name's Kamoliddin. My surname's Shohimardonov. I'm your Tajiki teacher.

- Thank you. Nice to meet you.

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Personal Pronouns

Person	Singular	Plural
I	ман (I)	мо (we)
II	ту (уои)	шумо (уои)
III	ӯ, вай (<i>he/she</i>)	онхо (they)

Remember: The pronoun IIIvmo is also used to show respect with the second person singular, in which case it is capitalised in writing (see commentary for further details). Likewise, the third person plural is sometimes used instead of the third person singular

when talking about someone for whom one has a lot of respect, such as one's parents, boss, or teachers.

The Inflectional Suffix "Izofat"

The inflectional suffix "izofat" - "-u" - is used to show relationship between words and to build expressions. In combination with the personal pronouns, the izofat is used to form possessive determiners (i.e. "my," "your," etc.) as shown in the following table:

Possessive Determiners

дусти ман	my friend
дўсти ту	your friend
дўсти ў / дўсти вай	his/her friend
дўсти мо	our friend
дўсти шумо	your friend
дўсти онхо	their friend

After a consonant, the "izofat" is pronounced /i/ but after a vowel it is pronounced /yi/: номи ман /nomi man/ донишчуй хуб /donish jüyi khub/ –

ту пате

a good student

Remember: The "izofat" is never stressed.

Also, in Tajiki, the inflected noun comes before the attribute. Compare with the English, in which the noun follows the attribute:

ҳамкори мо – our colleague

As in English, more than one attribute can be joined to a noun by the "izofat": номи ман ⇒ номи д⊽сти ман ⇒ номи д⊽сти хуби ман my name ⇒ my friend's name ⇒ my good friend's name

Pronominal Suffixes

Like possessive determiners—that is, the personal pronouns used in conjunction with the "izofat"—pronominal suffixes can be used to show relationship, or ownership. They are always written connected to the word they are associated with:

Singular		Plural		
possessive determiners pronominal suffixes		possessive determiners	pronominal suffixes	
дўсти ман	д <u>ў</u> ст <i>ам</i>	дўсти мо	дўстамон	
дўсти ту	д у ст <i>ат</i>	дусти шумо	дўст <i>атон</i>	
дўсти ў	дуст <i>аш</i>	дўсти онхо	д ў ст <i>ашон</i>	

Номи ту чй?

= Номат чи?

What is your name?

Ин хамкори мо.

= Ин хамкорамон.

This is our colleague.

Following a word ending in a vowel, with the exception of "a," the pronominal suffixes become -qm. -qm. -qm. -qmon. -qmon. and -quon respectively. Compare:

муаллимаам бобоям

= бобои ман

my teacher

= муаллимаи ман

mv grandfather

In colloquial Tajiki, the initial "a" of the pronominal suffixes is dropped when it follows a vowel: = хамааш

/hamash/ /dugonam/

= дугонаам

everything my friend (fem.)

Remember: Possessive suffixes are never stressed.

(For information concerning the difference in use between possessive determiners and the possessive use of pronominal suffixes, see the section "A Brief Introduction to Taiiki Grammar" at the end of the book.)

The Copula "Acm"

The copula "acm" - that is, the word joining the subject of a sentence to what is stated about the subject (the predicate) - is equivalent to the English word "is." However, in Taiiki (especially in the spoken language) it is often not used:

Номи ман Расул.

= Номи ман Расул аст. My name's Rasul.

With words that end in a vowel, the copula "acm" is usually abbreviated to the suffix

"-cm," both when written and spoken: $\bar{v}c\tau = \bar{v} ac\tau$

мост = мо аст

ohxoct = ohxoact

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

1. Construct sentences based on the following table:

Example: Номи ман Азиз аст.

номи	ман	Азиз	
	ту	Умед	аст.
	ÿ	Салима	acı.
	шумо	Муниса	

2. Change the possessive determiners for pronominal suffixes:

Example: муаллими ман ⇒ муаллимам

а. дусти ту

хамкори мо

с. дугонаи ман

d. муаллими шумо

е. хамкори онхо

f. устоди \overline{v}

3. Use possessive determiners to make phrases for each of the following nouns:

Example: дусти ман, дусти ту, дусти ў, дусти мо, дусти шумо, дусти онхо. с. муаллим

а. дугона b. хамкор

4. Transform the following sentences: Example: Акбар хамкори ман аст

→ Номи хамкори ман Акбар аст. (Akbar is my colleague - My colleague's name is Akbar.)

а. Нигина дугонаи ман аст.

d. китоб

с. Бобоев Акмал устоди онхост.

b. Салим Азизй муаллими мост. d. Заррина Муродовна хамкори ўст.

е. Искандар дусти туст.

5. Answer the questions and give the appropriate names in your answers:

Example: - Ин дусти Шумо?

- Ха, ин дусти ман. Номаш Одил аст.

а. - Ин дугонаи ту?

b. - Ин муаллими мо?

с. - Ин дусти ў?

d. - Ин устоди онхо?

е. - Ин кас хамкори Шумо?

16 A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

-

6.	Make questions for the following sentences.
	Example: Номи дўсти ман Камол аст.
	<i>⇔ <u>Номи дўсти Шумо чй?</u></i>

а. Номи ў Саид аст.

Номи муаллими мо Карим Ализода аст.

с. Номи дусти у Хабиб аст.

d. Номи дугонаам Рухшона аст.

7. Form father's names and surnames (family names) from the following first names (See commentary for information on names):

⇒ Собировна ⇒ Собирова (female)

а. Халим b. Мурод с. Эрач d. Кабир е. Ахмад

OUIZ

f. Насим

САНЧИШ

1. Give answers to the following questions: 8. - Мебахшед. 1. – Шумо чй хел?

9. – Номи Шумо чй? 2. - Аз дидани Шумо шодам!

- 10. - Ин кас кй? 3. - Xайр!

-

11. – Ин кас дусти Шумо? 4. - Даромадан мумкин? -

12. - Номи устоди Шумо чй? 5. - Салом. Нигина!

- - 6. - То боздид! 13. - Хеле мамнунам.

14. – Шумо нагз-мй? 7. – Ташаккур! -

2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the following answers:

8. -- 1. - - Салом, Нигора. - Ман хам.

2. –

- Номи хамкори ман Мурод. - Хеч гап не. 3. –

 Номи ў Парвина. - Мархамат.

4. – 11. –

- Не, номи ман Далер. - Худо хофиз! 5. –

Ха, ин дугонаи ман. - Намеарзад.

- Номи ман Диловар. Ин кас дусти ман.

14. –

- То дидан! - Ташаккур, нагз. Шумо чй?

3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson two and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.

Дарси 3

Lesson 3

Оила

Family

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

Family relationships in Tajikistan, as in other Eastern countries, follow a strict hierarchy. They exist not only between members of one family - father, mother, and children - but also between various related families. Adults and older relatives have a significant influence over what is decided on family matters. For instance, their advice and active participation determines proceedings for ceremonies such as boys' circumcision rituals, weddings, and

Even now in Taiikistan the majority of young couples getting married are related. This situation is especially seen in regional districts. The second largest group of newly-married couples is seen between people from the same village or the same city. In particular, in cities where representatives from different regions live - for instance, in the capital, Dushanbe this situation can frequently be found. Weddings between people from different regions or different nationalities are very few, although they are seen more frequently in larger cities where people from different areas and nationalities live together.

There are two types of wedding ceremonies: official (state) and traditional (religious). Official wedding ceremonies are recorded in a special government office and a marriage certificate is issued. Traditional wedding ceremonies take place in a house (preferably that of the bride) in the presence of a religious leader (a "mullah"). This latter ceremony is very simple and doesn't involve a lot of people. Usually the traditional wedding ceremony precedes the official ceremony and no official documents are involved. More is said about these and the huge parties normally associated with the occasions in lesson nineteen.

In literary language, the words for father and mother are nadap and modap. However, in spoken language, depending on the area, various other words are also used. For instance, instead of $na\partial ap$, the following are also used: $\partial a\partial a$, $\partial o\partial o$, and $\partial a\partial o$ (in northern and some central dialects) and oma and ama (in southern dialects); similarly, for modap: бува, ona and an are used in the north, and oua in the south. The variety of words an individual uses for nadap and modap is not this great, but in any given area it is possible to hear these different

To show their difference in age, brothers and sisters also use different words in their spoken language. So, ακο and ακα are used to refer to an older brother, δοδαρ, γκο and γκα for a younger brother, ana and as for an older sister, and xoxap and, in northern dialects, νκο for a younger sister.

Depending on the kind of family relationships, there is almost a special word for each member. Thus, in the vocabulary list, where necessary, the exact nature of relationships has also been specified alongside the English equivalents.

Some of the terms defined in the following vocabulary lists are used more broadly than the exact relationship that constitutes their primary meaning. For instance, xona, amak and mago are frequently used to show respect when addressing strangers. This is also true of nuza and 6060. Auza is primarily used to refer to a "brother's wife" or an "uncle's wife." However, it is also used to show respect when addressing or referring to the wife of friends, neighbours, and other people who are known to the speaker. For instance, it is not polite to ask a friend "sanam uu xen?"; while, it is possible to ask "sanamou uu xen?" it is more normal to ask "янгаам чи хел?" if the wife is older than the person asking and "келин чи хел?" if she is younger. In addition, for the first night of a marriage, both of the bride and groom's families appoint a lady from among their relatives to attend and advise the newly-weds; these ladies are also referred to as *muza*.

Similarly, 6060 primarily refers to one of a person's two grandfathers. However, it is also used by young people to show respect when addressing an elderly man of around their grandparents' age. Sometimes the word is combined with the man's name, e.g. E060 Kapum, or Kapum-6060.

ЛУГАТ

VOCABULARY

nephew, niece (sister's child)

cousin

падар	father		модар	mother
бародар	brother		xoxap	sister; younger sister
ако / ака		rother	ука / додар	younger brother
апа / ая	older s		VKO	younger sibling
кудак	child		фарзанд	(one's own) child;
бача		son; bov	Antonia	offspring
писар	son; be	, ,	духтар	daughter; girl
зан	wife; v		шавхар/шу	husband
оила	family		тифл	baby
	72		ion of the relation	
бобо ¹			/ падари модар	grandfather
бибй		модари падар		grandmother
модаркалон		модари мода		grandmother
бобокалон			ладари бибй	great-grandfather
бибикалон			/модари бибй	great-grandmother
амак!		бародари пад		uncle (father's brother)
тағой / тағо ^{1,2}		бародари мод	цар	uncle (mother's brother)
амма		хохари падар		aunt (father's sister)
хола1		хохари модар)	aunt (mother's sister)
набера		фарзанди фар	занд	grandchild
абера		фарзанди наб	iepa	great-grandchild
арўс	bride		шах	bridegroom
келин	bride;	daughter-in-	домод	bridegroom; son-in-
	law			law
мучаррад	single	(masc. and fem.)	духтари хона	l single (fem.)
хонадор / оиладор	marrie	d	духтари қад	pac
номзад	fiancé	(e)	, бева / бевазан	widow
ятим / сағир	orphar	1	безан	widower
		Exact descript	ion of the relation	nship
чиян (бародарзода) ³		фарзанди бар	одар	nephew, niece
		;		(brother's child)

These terms are also used to show respect to strangers.	See commentary for further details.
---	-------------------------------------

фарзанди хохар

амма / хола

фарзанди амак / таго /

чиян (хохарзода)

амакбача / тагобача /

аммабача / холабача

	хушдоман (модарарўс)	модари зан	mother-in-law
	хушдоман (модаршў)	модари шавхар	(wife's mother) mother-in-law
	амак / қайнато / хусур	падари зан	(husband's mother) father-in-law
	(падарарўс)		(wife's father)
	амак / қайнато / хусур	падари шавхар	father-in-law
	(падаршу)	_	(husband's father)
	янга / кеноя4	зани бародар	sister-in-law
			(brother's wife)
	язна / почо ⁴	шавхари хохар	brother-in-law (sister's husband)
	қайин-сингил (хоҳарарӯс)	хохари зан	sister-in-law (wife's sister)
	қайин-сингил (хохаршу)	хохари шавхар	sister-in-law
	(<u>F</u> 3)		(husband's sister)
	хевар / қайнй ⁴ (додарарус)	бародари зан	brother-in-law
		•	(wife's brother)
	хевар / қайнй ⁴ (додаршу)	бародари шавхар	brother-in-law
			(husband's brother)
	авусун	занхои бародарон байни	relationship between brothers'
		хам	wives
	боча	шавхархои хохарон байни	relationship between sisters'
		хам	husbands
-	TOTITATI (TOD)5 to have	! gr	one

доштан (дор)-	io nuve	AK	One
ва (-у, -ю)	and	ë	or
ҳанӯз	until; yet	холо	now; until now
пир	old, elderly	чавон	young
калон (калонй)6	old (older)	хурд (хурдй)6	young (younger)
мүйсафед	old man	кампир / пиразан	old woman
хона	house, home	насл	generation
	•	•	

СӮҲБАТҲО

DIALOGUES

1.	
– Салом алейкум, Рустам!	- Hello, Rustam.
– Салом, Зариф! Ту чй хел?	– Hi, Zarif. How are you?
– Ман нагз. Ту чи?	– I'm fine, and you?
– Ман хам нагз, рахмат.	- I'm fine, too. Thanks.
– Зариф, ту падар дорй?	- Zarif, have you got a father?
– Ха, дорам.	– Yes, I have.
– Номи падарат чй?	– What's your father's name?
– Номи падарам Абдулло	– My father's name's Abdullo.
– Модар чй?	– And do you have a mother?
– Модар хам дорам. Номи модарам	 I've got a mother, too. Her name's Mehri.
Мехри.	-

⁴ First form is central and southern dialect; second form is northern dialect.

² First form is central and southern dialect; second form is northern dialect.

³ The names of relationships in parentheses are the literary forms.

⁵ Verbs are shown in the vocabulary lists with their present tense verb stems in parenthesis.

⁶ Comparisons are made using the adjectives καποι and χγρὸ; καποιιῦ and χγρὸῦ are only used about siblings.

2.

- Биёед, шинос мешавем: номи ман Зулфия. Номи Шумо чй?

- Номи ман Бону.

- Бону, Шумо шавхар доред?

– Ҳа, ман шавҳар дорам.

– Номи шавхаратон чй?

Номи ў Човид. Шумо чй?Ман хам шавхар дорам.

- Номи шавхаратон чй?

- Номи шавхарам Фарход.

- Зулфия, Шумо фарзанд доред?

- Ҳа, ман як писар дорам.

Номи писаратон чй?

- Номи писарам Фирдавс. Шумо чй?

- He, ман ҳануз фарзанд надорам.

Бону, аз шиносой бо Шумо шодам.

– Ман хам.

– Хайр, Худо хофиз!

– Хайр.

3.

Салом, дугоначон!Салом. Шамсия!

– Замира, ту чй хел, нагз-мй?

– Ҳа, нағз. Ту чӣ?

– Рахмат, ман хам нагз.

– Шамсия, оилаи Шумо калон?

 На он қадар калон. Ман падар, модар, бародар ва хоҳар дорам.

- Номи падару модарат чй?

 Номи падарам Шуҳрат ва номи модарам Сурайё.

- Номи бародару хохарат чй?

Номи бародарам Бахтиёр ва номи хохарам Салима.

4.

- Салом алейкум, Пулод!

- Салом, Мастон. Ту чи хел?

- Нағз. Ту чй?

– Рахмат, ман хам нагз.

– Пулод, ту амак дорй?

- Ха, дорам.

- Номи амакат чй?

– Номи амакам Валй.

– Валй зан дорад?

– Бале.

- Номи зани Валй чй?

- Номи занаш Фарида.

– П⊽лод, ту амма ҳам дорӣ?

- We've not met: my name is Zulfiya. What's your name?

- My name's Bonu.

- Bonu, have you got a husband?

- Yes, I'm married.

- What's your husband's name?

- His name's Jovid. What about you?

- I'm married, too.

- What's your husband's name?

- My husband's name's Farhod.

- Zulfiya, have you got any children?

- Yes, I've got one son.

- What's your son's name?

- My son's name's Firdaus. And you?

- No, I haven't got any children yet.

- Bonu, I'm glad to have met you.

– Me too. – Goodbye!

- Bye!

- Hello, my friend. {girlfriend of a girl}

Hello, Shamsiya.Zamira, are you OK?Yes, I'm well. And you?

- I'm fine, too, thanks.

- Shamsiya, is your family large?

- Not that large. I've got a father, a mother, a brother, and a sister.

- What are your parents' names?

- My father's name's Shuhrat and mother's name's Surayyo.

– And what are your brother's and sister's names?

- My brother's name's Bakhtiyor and sister's name's Salima.

- Hello, Pülod.

- Hi. Maston. How are you?

- Fine, and you?

- I'm fine, too, thanks.

- Pülod, do you have a {paternal} uncle?

- Yes, I do.

- What's your uncle's name?

His name's Vali.Is he married?

Yes.

- And what's his wife's name?

- His wife's name is Farida.

- Pülod, do you have a {paternal} aunt?

- Не, ман амма надорам.

– Хола чй?

– Хола хам надорам.

- Тағо дорй?

- Ха, таго дорам. Номаш Точиддин.

– Точиддин зан дорад?

– Не, ў мучаррад аст.

5.

- Руз ба хайр, Рахим Бобоевич!

- Салом алейкум, Салимзода!

 Рахим Бобоевич, мархамат, шинос шавед: ин кас хамкори мо – Ануша Собировна.

- Салом, Ануша, аз дидани Шумо шодам.

Салом, Рахим Бобоевич, ман ҳам шодам.

- Ануша, Шумо оила доред?

Бале, ман шавхар ва як духтар дорам.
 Шумо чй?

- Не, ҳанӯз ман мучаррадам.

6.

- Салом алейкум, Раъно!

- Салом, Нигора! Шинос шав, ин кас шавхари ман - Далер.

– Нигора.

- Хеле мамнунам, Нигора.

 – Ман ҳам аз шиносой бо Шумо хеле шодам. Раъно, ин кй?

- Ин писари мо, номаш Аличон.

Чи хел писари нагз, салом Аличон!Салом.

- Хайр, Раъно, хайр, Далер!

– То боздид, Нигора!

7.

– Шумо бародар доред?

– Ҳа, дорам.

– Номи бародаратон чй?

Номи ў Хаким.Хаким зан дорад?

– Бале, дорад.

– Номи янгаатон чй?

- Номи янгаам Нориннисо.

Онхо фарзанд доранд?

- Ха, онхо як писару як духтар доранд.

– Номи чиянхоятон чй?

- Номи чиянхоям Сабур ва Аниса.

8. [northern dialect]

Ассалом, писари нагз, номи ту чй?

– Диловар.

- No. I don't.

- Or a {maternal} aunt?

- I don't have a {maternal} aunt, either.

- Do you have a {maternal} uncle?

- Yes, I have. His name's Tojiddin.

- Is Tojiddin married?

- No, he's single.

- Good afternoon, Rahim Boboyevich.

- Good afternoon, Salimzoda.

- Rahim Boboyevich, let me introduce you: this is our colleague - Anusha Sobirovna.

- Hello, Anusha. Nice to meet you.

- Hello, Rahim Boboyevich. Nice to meet vou. too.

- Anusha, do vou have a family?

- Yes, I'm married and I have a daughter.
What about you?

- No. I'm still single.

- Hello, Ra'no,

- Hello, Nigora. Let me introduce you: this is my husband, Daler.

- Nigora.

Very nice to meet you, Nigora.

- Nice to meet you, too. Ra'no, who's this?

- This is our son, his name's Alijon.

- What a nice boy! Hello Alijon! - Hi

– Hi. – Bve Ra'no: bve Daler!

...

- Have you got a brother?

- Yes, I do.
- What is his name?

- See you, Nigora!

His name's Hakim.Is he married?

Is he marr
Yes, he is.

- Yes, he is.
- What's the name of your sister-in-law?

- Her name's Norinniso.

- Do they have any children?

Yes, they have a son and a daughter.What are your nephew's and niece's names?

- Their names are Sabur and Anisa.

- Hello, son, what is your name?

- Dilovar.

– Диловарчон, ту дада дорй?

– Xa.

- Бува ч**й**?

– Бува хам дорам.

– Росташа гӯ⁷, дадат нагз, ё буват?8

- Бувам...

- Dilovarjon, have you got a father?

Yes.

- And a mother?

- I've got a mother, too.

- Tell me, whom do you love more: your

father or your mother?

- My mother...

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Conjugation of Verbs: Present-Future Tense

One of the most important features of Tajiki verbs is their being conjugated according to the person and number of the subject. The part of the word, following the verb stem, that indicates the number and person of the verb is called the verb ending, or subject marker.

Conjugation of the irregular verb "доштан" ("to have") in the present-future tense

Person	Singular	Plural
I	(ман) дорам – <i>I have</i>	(мо) дорем - we have
II	(ту) дорй – you have	(шумо) доред – you have
III	(ў, вай) дорад – he/she has	(онхо) доранд – they have

The present tense verb stem of the verb *domman* is "dop". The verb endings, or subject markers, are "-am", " $-\bar{u}$ ", "-am", "-em", "-em", "-em", and "-am". Since the verb endings indicate the number and person of the subject of the verb, use of personal pronouns with verbs is unnecessary in Tajiki and they are usually omitted: e.g.

дорам = ман дорам, дорй = ту дорй, etc.

The negative form of the verb is formed by adding the prefix "na-". It is always joined to the verb as a single word in writing:

Negative conjugation of the irregular verb "HOWITAH" ("to have") in the present-future tense

Person	Singular	Plural
I	надорам – I don't have	надорем – we don't have
II	надорй – you don't have	надоред – you don't have
III	надорад – he/she doesn't have	надоранд – they don't have

Simple Questions

In Tajiki, simple questions are formed by adding a question mark to sentences, without changing the order of the words. In speech, similar to English, the change is indicated by a final rise in intonation:

- Шумо падар доред.

- You have a father.

- Шумо падар доред?

- Have you got a father?

⁷ Pocmawa zv = Pocmawpo zvu, meaning, "tell the truth."

In northern dialects, questions can also be formed by adding the question particle "- $m\bar{u}$ " to the end of the sentence. It is never stressed and is always written as being separated from the word to which it is added by a hyphen:

- Ту писар дорй-*мй*?

- Do you have a son?

- Салим зан дорад-*м*<u>и</u>?

- Is Salim married?

In literary Tajiki, the question particles oë and mazap ("really?") are also sometimes used to form questions. They usually come at the start of the sentence and express doubt or surprise:

- Oë Шумо падар доред?

- Do vou have a father?

- Магар ¬ шавхар дорад? — Does she really have a husband?

The conjunction \ddot{e} ("or") is also used to form specific questions:

— Шумо писар доред ё духтар?

- Do you have a son or a daughter?

Ин писар ё духтар?

- Is this a boy or a girl?

Positive and negative responses to questions

?	+	-
Шумо падар доред?	Ха, ман падар дорам.	Не, ман падар надорам.
(Have you got a father?)	(Yes, I've got a father.)	(No, I haven't got a father.)
Ту шавхар дорӣ?	Бале, ман шавхар дорам.	Не, ман шавхар надорам.
(Have you got a husband?)	(Yes, I've got a husband.)	(No, I haven't got a husband.)
У писар дорад?	Xа, ў писар дорад.	Не, ў писар надорад.
(Has he got a son?)	(Yes, he's got a son.)	(No, he hasn't got a son.)

The affirmative words "xa" and "6ane" ("yes") are synonyms, but "6ane" is the more literary form.

The Conjunction "Ba" ("-y" and "-10")

In Tajiki, there are two forms of the conjunction "and": sa and "-y" ("-w"). The conjunction sa is always written separately from the words it links:

Дўст ва бародар. Домод ва арўс. Карим ва Насим. Friend <u>and</u> brother. Bride <u>and</u> groom. Karim <u>and</u> Nasim.

In contrast, the conjunctions "-y" and "- $i\sigma$ " are always written attached to the first of the two linked words. The conjunction "-y" is used following a consonant and "- $i\sigma$ " following a vowel:

Падару писар. Домоду арўс. Нигинаю Аниса. Бобою набера. Father <u>and</u> son. Bride <u>and</u> groom. Nigina <u>and</u> Anisa.

Grandfather <u>and</u> grandson.

It should be stated that the conjunction "sa" is mostly used to join sentences in literary Tajiki. In colloquial Tajiki, "-y" and "-10" are normally used to join words. In the literary language, another variant "-ey" is also used following a vowel:

мову шумо.

We <u>and</u> you.

холаву амма.

Maternal <u>and</u> paternal aunts.

^{*} Aadam = Aadaam, meaning, "your father." Byeam = byeaam, meaning, "your mother."

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

1. Construct sentences based on the following table:

Example:	<u>Ман падај</u>	<u>дорам.</u>	Номи	падарам	Валй	acm.
----------	------------------	---------------	------	---------	------	------

Ман	падар модар писар хохар амак хола	Номи	падарам модарам писарам хохарам амакам холаам	Олим Нор Наим Азиза Аниса М⊽ниса	аст.
-----	--	------	--	---	------

2. Construct sentences based on the following table:

Example: Мадина шавхар дорад. Номи шавхараш Далер аст.

Мадина	зан			зан	Далер	
Акрам	шавхар			шавхар	Мижгона	
Чон	бародар)	бародар	Саттор	
Марк	хохар			хохар	Ромиш	
Чил	модар	man.	Номи	модар	Алй	0.000
Mo	падар	дор	поми	падар	Сулхия	аст.
Онхо	писар			писар	Аббос	
Ty	духтар			духтар	Мастон	
Шумо	амма			амма	Дилором	
Ÿ	тағо			таго	Тахмина	

3. Fill in the following spaces (...) with appropriate words:

Example: Номи падарам Ахрор аст.

- а. ... падарам Ахрор аст.
- с. Уяк... дорад.
- е. Номи ... Бахтиёр аст.
- g. Ту модар ... ?
- i. Номи ... ту чū?

- b. Мавзуна шавхар
- d. Номи ... Акрам Мухаммал аст.
- f. Номи занам Гуландом....
- h. Сафар бародар ... хохар дорад?

4. Fill in the following spaces (...) with appropriate words:

Example: Ман модар дорам.

- а. Ман ... дорам.
- b. Шумо ... доред. е. Ту ... дорй.
- с. Онхо ... доранд. f. Мо ... дорем.

d. Парвиз ... дорад. g. Эрачу Искандар ... доранд.

5. Complete the following sentences with the correct personal pronouns:

Example: Мо хохар дорем.

- а. ... хохар дорем. b. ... бародар доред? d. ... амак дорй? e. ... зан дорад.
- с. ... падару модар доранд. f. ... як писару як духтар дорам.
- 6. Complete the following sentences with the correct verb endings:

Example: Халима бародар дорад.

- а. Халима бародар дор.... b. Ман хола дор
- с. Мо тағо дор....
- d. Онхо фарзанд надор.... e. Бародарам зан дор.... f. Ту модар дор
- g. Шумо падар дор ...? h. Хуршеда шавхар дор

7. Give positive and negative responses to the following questions: Шумо писар доред?

Example:

⇒ Ха, ман писар дорам.

- ⇒ Не, ман писар надорам. а. Рустам падар дорад?
- b. Онхо модар доранд?
- с. Ту бародар дорй?
- d. Усмону Нозим хохар доранд?
- е. Шумо фарзанд доред?
- f. Фарзона шавхар дорад?

8. Read the following text and express the same information in English:

Номи ман Диловар аст. Ман падару модар ва як хохар дорам. Номи падарам Иброхим ва номи модарам Малохат аст. Хохарам Азиза ном дорад. У шавхар дорад. Номи язнаам Мурод аст. Онхо як писару як духтар доранд. Номи чиянхоям Фарход ва Фарзона аст.

Ман амаку хола хам дорам. Номи амакам Шавкат ва номи холаам Шарифа аст.

- 9. Read the proverbs below. Memorise any that you might be able to use in conversation: A good child is his father's garden; Фарзанди нагз - боги падар, a bad child is his sorrow. Фарзанди бад - доги падар.
 - Духтар чй гуна? - Модар намуна.

- What's a daughter? - The model of her mother.

Good friends are like the children of one

Дустони нагз мисли фарзандони як father and mother. падару модаранд. A close neighbour is better than a distant

Аз хеши дур хамсояи наздик бех.

relative. A husband and wife's quarrelling only goes as far as the edge of the bed.

Чанги зану шавхар то лаби чогах.

If the father is satisfied and the mother is satisfied, then is God also satisfied.

Аз хурдон хато, аз бузургон ато.

Падар розй, модар розй - Худо розй.

The young make mistakes; the great forgive.

САНЧИШ

OUIZ

1. Give answers to the following questions:

1. – Шумо бародар доред?

2. - Наргис шавхар дорад?

3. - Номи хохаратон чи?

8. – Онхо бобо доранд?

9. – Номи модари ў чй?

10. – Шинос шавед: ин кас бародари ман Насим.

4. - Ин писари Шумо? -

11. – Ин кас кй?

-

_

¹ Хохарам Азиза ном дорад. = Номи хохарам Азиза аст.

26 A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

 5. — Бародари Шумо зан дорад?
 12. — Номи Шумо Азиз?

 — . . .
 — . . .

 6. — Ту амак дорй?
 13. — Ў хола дорад?

 — . . .
 — . . .

 7. — Номи чиянат чй?
 14. — Номи холаи Парвона чй?

 — . . .
 — . . .

2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the following answers:

2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the j	following answers:
1. – ?	7. – ?
– Не, ман хохар надорам.	– Ха, онхо падару модар доранд.
2. – ?	8. – ?
– Ҳа, Сайф зан дорад.	– Не, ў амма надорад.
3. – ?	9. – ?
– Ха, ман як писар дорам.	– Номи модари ў Мадина аст.
4. – ?	10. – ?
– Номи бародараш Хуршед аст.	 Номи янгаам Мунира аст.
5. – ?	11. – ?
 Ин набераи ман аст. 	– Ха, Самад таго дорад.
6. – ?	12. – ?
 Номи духтарам Фарангис аст. 	– Номи ман Нодира аст.

- 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson three and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.
- 4. Write a description about yourself similar to that in exercise 8.

Дарси 4

Lesson 4

Маориф – Касбу кор

Education - Professions

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

Children are usually part of a kindergarten (๑๐๕ча) from the age of one-and-a-half and do not go to school (мактаби миёна) until they are seven years old. This has two divisions: elementary classes, the first four years (синфхои ибтидой), and upper classes, years five to eleven (синфхои болой). Some people leave school after year nine (so, at age 16) and are awarded a certificate (аптестат от шаходатиома) of incomplete school education (маълумоти миёнаи иопурра); those who study to year eleven (age 18) receive a certificate of school education (маълумоти миёна).

Having left school, there are then two ways into a profession: firstly, by studying at an institute or university (δουμαινοχ) and, secondly, by training as an apprentice under an ycmo – a "master." University degrees usually last four or five years, and two types of diploma (διαποπ) are awarded: blue (pass) and red (pass with distinction). Some places are now offering an alternative two-tier system equivalent to the B.A. and M.A.—a four year δακαπασρ and a two-year mazucmpa. Those who continue the education beyond this level, do so as acnupaum, either for three years of full-time study (pȳ3ona) or four years part-time (201601a). After this period, the acnupaum may defend his thesis to become a "master of science" (110π3αδι 11πα). The few who continue beyond this level may gain a doctorate after two or three years, to become δοκποραμπ.

The second route of training—as an apprentice—is more traditional and is particularly found in the handicrafts. Fathers teach their sons the profession of their ancestors and by this means trades and professions are passed from one generation to the next. In addition, other people—neighbours, acquaintances, and relatives—bring their children to work as apprentices to skilled masters. The masters teach their trade to apprentices for a certain period of time, after which the apprentices are able to work by themselves. Professions that are passed on from one generation to the next or by apprentices training under a master are the most ancient of professions and include workmen, jewellers, copper-workers, carpenters, painters, butchers, bakers, sweet-makers, hairdressers, shoemakers, carpet-makers, and tailors of national clothes.

In recent years, technical institutes and colleges (omỹuuzox) have also begun teaching these traditional professions. However, with the emergence of these, the importance of these traditional trades and professions has diminished. Folk craftsmen, of course, do not possess a diploma or certificate; their main orders come from individuals, and their products are to be seen in the local markets. These specialists, or masters, are called ycmo and to distinguish between them their particular profession is sometimes added to their title; for instance, ycmou xappom ("a carpenter"), ycmou capmapou ("a hairdresser or barber"), and ycmou mỹadỹa ("a shoemaker"). Most of these masters work both in state workshops and carry out additional orders for other individuals. The form of payment for such work can be hourly, daily or by the job. Folk craftsmen also display their products in international exhibitions. In Tajikistan, there are a significant number of people who have won prizes in various competitions and exhibitions.

In historical cities, streets are often still named after the particular kind of craftsmen who traditionally worked in that street. For instance, in Istaravshan (north Tajikistan) there are famous streets of knife-makers, cotton-dyers, butchers, and so on.

ЛУҒАТ

VOCABULARY

ихтисос	speciality	вазифа	position, post
сафир	ambassador	Вазир	minister
мудир	chairman, manager	раис	director, head
корманд	employee	корчаллон	businessman
котиб (fem.:	secretary	савдогар (точир)	merchant, dealer,
котиба)	legislator	Савдогар (точир)	tradesman
хукукшинос	pensioner	иқтисодчй	economist
нафақахур	interpreter	духтур	doctor
тарчумон	teacher	ронанда	driver
муаллим (fem.:		донишч⊽	student
муаллима)	graduate student	шогирд	student; disciple
аспирант	schoolchild	талаба (fem.:	pupil
мактаббача		толиба)	
коргар	employee, worker	дехкон	peasant, farmer
ошпаз	cook	сартарош	hairdresser, barber
рассом	artist	наққош	painter
сароянда	singer	навозанда	musician
актёр (хунарманд) ²	actor, actress	варзишгар	sportsman
суратгир	photographer	нависанда	author, writer
усто	master, foreman,	шоир (fem.: шоира)	poet
	skilled workman	посбон	guard, watchman
механик	mechanic	меъмор	architect, builder
мухандис	engineer	охангар	blacksmith
заргар	jeweller	кордгар	knife-maker
қассоб	butcher	нонвой	baker
қолинбоф	carpet-maker	дуредгар / харрот	carpenter
мўзадўз	shoemaker	дўзанда	seamstress
шахр	city, town	ошхона	national cafe
бозор	market	магоза	shop
донишгох	university	мактаб	school
факулта	faculty	богча	kindergarten
сафорат /	embassy	устохона	workshop
сафоратхона		корхона	workshop, enterprise
вазорат	ministry	ширкат	firm, company
ташкилоти	international	беморхона /	hospital
байналмилалй	organisation	бемористон	
идора	office	почта	post-office
бонк	bank	театр	theatre
сартарошхона	hairdresser's,	кинотеатр	cinema
	_barber's	автобаза	bus depot
нон	flat, round bread	орд	flour
шакар	sugar	қанд	sweets, candy
савод	literacy	босавод	literate
бесаводй	illiteracy	бесавод	illiterate
таълим / таълимот	teaching, instruction	таълимй	educational

тафтиш	inspection	касби	professional	
диплом	(university) degree	рисола	thesis	
хабар	information, news	хатм	graduation	
машхур	well-known, famous	нафақа	pension	
серкор	busy	танбал	lazy	
будан (бош)	to be	кардан (кун)	to make, to do	
кор кардан	to work, to do	зиндагй кардан	to live	
хондан (хон)	to read, to study	тахсил кардан	to study	
дифоъ кардан	to defend (a thesis)	хатм кардан	to graduate	
Шумо дар кучо кор м	екунед?	Where do you work?		
Ман дар мактаб кор і	мекунам.	I work in a school.		
Ихтисоси Шумо чи?		What's your speciality?		
Ман мухандис.		I'm an engineer.		
Шумо дар кадом вази (Шумо кй?)	нфа кор мекунед?	What's your position?		
Ман муаллими дониц	игох. (Ман дар	I'm a university teacher.		
вазифаи муаллим ко	ор мекунам.)	(I work as a university teacher.)		
Шумо дар кучо мехон	нед?	Where do you study?		
Ман дар донишгох мехонам.		I study at university.		
Шумо духтур?		Are you a doctor?		
Ха, ман духтур.		Yes, I'm a doctor.		
Шумо кор мекунед?		Do you work?		
Не, ман кор намекуна	им, ман мехонам.	No, I don't; I study.		

$C \overline{Y} X \overline{b} A T X O$

DIALOGUES

I.	
– Салом алейкум!	– Hello.
– Салом алейкум!	– Hi.
 Биёед шинос мешавем: номи ман Мансур. 	- We've not met: my name's Mansur.
- Бисёр хуб. Номи ман Сомон.	- Nice to meet you. My name's Somon.
- Сомон, ихтисоси Шумо чй?	– Somon, what do you do?
– Ман муаллим. Шумо чй?	– I'm a teacher. And you?
– Ман мухандис.	– I'm an engineer.
2.	
– Ин кас кй?	– Who is this?
 Ин кас дусти ман – Баходур. 	 This is my friend: Bahodur.
- Баходур, Шумо дар кучо кор мекунед?	– Bahodur, where do you work?
- Ман дар сафорат кор мекунам.	 I work at an embassy.
– Вазифаи Шумо чй?	– What's your position?
– Ман тарчумон.	– I'm an interpreter.
3.	
 Шарифчон, Шумо мехонед ё кор мекунед? 	– Sharifjon, do you study or work?
- Ман мехонам.	– I study.
- Шумо дар кучо мехонед?	– And where do you study?
– Ман дар донишгох мехонам.	 I study at university.

¹ The first form is spoken Tajiki form; the word in parenthesis is the literary Tajiki word.

² The first form is a foreign word assimilated into Tajiki via Russian; the word in parenthesis is the literary Tajiki word. Хупарманд includes not just actors and actresses from film and theatre, but all artistes.

- Шумо дар кучо зиндагй мекунед?
- Ман дар Душанбе зиндаги мекунам.

4.

- Фарогат, Шумо бародар доред?
- Ха, ман бародар дорам.
- Номи бародари Шумо чй?
- Номи бародарам Нурулло.
- Нурулло кор мекунад?
- Ҳа, ӯ кор мекунад.
- Касби ў чй?
- Ӯ харрот.

5

- Файзулло, Шумо духтур?
- Не, ман духтур не, ман муаллим.
- Шумо дар кучо кор мекунед?
- Ман дар донишгох кор мекунам.

6.

- Зумрат, шинос шав, ин кас дугонаи ман
 Мари.
- Хеле мамнунам. Мари, ихтисоси Шумо чй?
- Ман хукукшинос.
- Шумо дар кучо кор мекунед?
- Ман дар ташкилоти байналмилалй кор мекунам. Шумо кй?
- Ман тарчумон.
- Шумо дар кучо кор мекунед?
- Ман дар сафорат кор мекунам.

7.

- Cухроб, ту кор мекуни ё мехони?
- Ман кор мекунам.
- Дар кучо кор мекунй?
- Ман иктисодчй, дар бонки миллй кор мекунам
- Дусти ту Қаюм чй? У хам кор мекунад?
- He, \bar{v} дар коллеч мехонад.

8.

- Шинос шав, Умарчон, инхо дустони ман.
 Шарофчон тарчумон аст, дар
 ташкилоти байналмилалй кор мекунад.
 Мухаммад ронанда аст, у дар автобаза кор мекунад.
 Асаду Самад донишчу, харду дар донишгох мехонанд.
- Аз дидани Шумо шодам.
- Мо хам. Мебахшед, номи Шумо чй?
- Номи ман Умар. Ман хамкори Хуршед.

- Where do you live?
- I live in Dushanbe.
- Faroghat, have you got a brother?
- Yes, I have.
- What's his name?
- His name's Nurullo.
- Does Nurullo work?
- Yes, he does.
- What does he do?
- He's a carpenter.
- Faizullo, are you a doctor?
- No. I'm not: I'm a teacher.
- Where do vou work?
- I work in the university.
- Zumrat, let me introduce you, this is my friend: Mary.
- Nice to meet you. Mary, what do you do?
- I'm a lawver.
- Where do you work?
- I work for an international organisation. What about you?
- I'm an interpreter.
- Where do you work?
- I work at an embassy.
- Sührob, do you work or study?
- I work.
- Where do you work?
- I'm an economist; I work in the national bank.
- And your friend Qayum? Does he work, too?
- No. he studies in college.
- Let me introduce you, Umarjon; these are my friends. Sharofjon is an interpreter and works for an international organisation. Muhammad is a driver and works in a bus depot. Asad and Samad are university students.
- Nice to meet you.
- And you. Sorry, what's your name?
- My name's Umar. I'm Khurshed's colleague.

- Шумо ҳам ҳуқуқшинос?
- Не, ман корчаллон.

9.

- Сайф, тағой ту чй кор мекунад?
- Тагоям коргар. У дар корхона кор мекунад.
- Амакат чй кор мекунад?
- Амакам дехкон.
- Бобоят хам кор мекунад?
- Не, ў нафакахўр.

10.

- Мадина, ту падару модар дорй?
- '- Xa.
- Номи онҳо чӣ?
- Номи падарам Султон, номи модарам Дилбар.
- Онхо кор мекунанд?
- Xa.
- Дар кучо кор мекунанд?
- Падарам хукукшинос, ў дар вазорат кор мекунад. Модарам духтур. Вай дар беморхона кор мекунад.
- Ту хоҳару бародар ҳам дорӣ?
- Ха, ман як бародар ва як хохар дорам.
- Онхо хам кор мекунанд?
- Не, бародарам дар донишгох тахсил мекунад, хохарам дар мактаб мехонад.

11.

- Бахром, ин чй?
- Ин корхона.
- Дар ин чо кихо кор мекунанд?
- Дар ин чо коргарони касбу кори гуногун – харротон, мухандисон, ронандагон кор мекунанд.
- Он чӣ?
- Он театр.
- Дар он чо кихо кор мекунанд?
- Дар он чо сарояндагон, актёрхо, навозандагон кор мекунанд.
- Вай чй?
- Вай корхонаи хунархои дастй. Дар он охангарон, заргарон, колинбофон, дузандагон кор мекунанд.

- Are vou a lawyer, too?
- No. I'm a businessman.
- Saif, what does your uncle do?
- My uncle's a worker. He works in a workshop.
- What does your {paternal} uncle do?
- My uncle's a farmer.
- Does your grandfather work, too?
- No. He's a pensioner.
- Madina have you got parents?
- Yes. I have.
- What are their names?
- My father's name's Sulton, my mother's name's Dilbar.
- Do they work?
- Yes.
- Where?
- My father's a lawyer; he works in one of the ministries. My mother's a doctor; she works in a hospital.
- Do you have a brother and a sister?
- Yes. I have one brother and one sister.
- Do they work?
- No, my brother studies at university and my sister's at school.
- Rahrom what is this?
- It's a workshop.
- Who works here?
- People of various professions work here: carpenters, engineers, and drivers.
- And what's that?
- That's a theatre.
- And who works there?
- Singers, actors and musicians work there.
- What's that?
- That's a handicraft enterprise. Blacksmiths, jewellers, carpet-makers and seamstresses work there.

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Conjugation of Verbs: More Present-Future Tense

Conjugation of the verb "будан" ("to be") in the present-future tense Version 1

Person	Singular	Plural
I	мебошам – <i>I ат</i>	мебошем – we are
\mathbf{II}	мебошй – you are	мебошед – <i>you are</i>
III	мебошад – he/she is	мебошанд – they are

Version 2

Person	Singular	Plural
I	(ман)ам – <i>I ат а</i>	(мо)ем – we are
II	(ту)й – you are a	(шумо)ед – you are
III	$(\bar{y}) \dots ac\tau - he/she is a \dots$	(онхо)ан <u>д</u> – <i>they are</i>

In the second form of the verb to be (6ydan) in the present-future tense, just the copula suffixes are used in the place of the verb. This second form is the one most commonly used:

Ман коргарам.	=	Ман коргар мебощам.	_	I am a worker.
Ту коргари.	=	Ту коргар мебощи.	-	You are a worker.
$ar{ extsf{y}}$ коргар аст.	=	$ar{\mathtt{y}}$ коргар мебошад.	_	He/she is a worker.
Мо коргарем.	=	Мо коргар мебошем.	_	We are workers.
Шумо коргаред.	=	Шумо коргар мебошед.	_	You are workers.
Онхо коргаранд.	=	Онхо коргар мебощанд.	_	They are workers.

In colloquial Tajiki, the copula suffixes are frequently dropped:

Ман коргар. = Ман коргарам.

Падари ў коргар. = Падари ў коргар аст.

In literary Taiiki, there is a further third form of the verb used: xacmam, xacmū, xacm, хастем, хастед, хастанд; the negative form of which is: нестам, нести, нест, нестем, necmed, necmand. However it is very rare, so it hasn't been included here. [Cf. the section "Act" and "Xact" later in this lesson. I

Conjugation of regular verbs in the present-future tense

With the exception of *domman*, described in the previous lesson, and $\theta y \partial a n$, described above, the present-future tense is formed by adding the prefix "me-" and the subject marker verb endings to the present tense verb stem. Verbs in the vocabulary lists are shown in the infinitive with their present tense verb stems in parentheses. For kapdan (meaning "to make, to do" but usually occurring together with nouns and adjectives as part of compound verbs rather than on its own), the present tense verb stem is "kyn;" thus:

Conjugation of the verb "кор кардан" ("to work") in the present-future tense

Person	Singular	Plural
I	кор мекунам	кор мекунем
II	кор мекунй	кор мекунед
III	кор мекунад	кор мекунанд

Conjugation of the verb "зиндагй кардан" ("to live") in the present-future tense

Person	Singular	Plural
I	зиндагй мекунам	зиндагй мекунем
II	зиндагй мекунй	зиндагй мекунед
III	зиндагй мекунад	зиндагй мекунанд

The present-future tense has a broad range of meaning and is used in situations that would require the present simple, the present continuous, or the future use of "going to" in English. See lesson six for more detail about use of the present-future tense:

Ман дар Хоруг зиндагй мекунам.

I live in Khorugh.

У холо дар бозор *кор мекунад*.

She's now working in the market. Are you really going to work in

Магар Шумо дар Тавилдара кор

Tavildara?

мекунед?

It is important to note that verbs always come at the end of Tajiki sentences: I work at the university.

Ман дар донишгох кор мекунам.

The negative form of verbs are formed by adding the prefix "ua-": Ман кор намекунам. I don't work.

To ask "where ...?", the words "dap κγγο ...?" are used, preceding the verb:

- Шумо *дар кучо* кор мекунед?

- Where do you work?

Plural Forms of Nouns

	Suffix "-xo"	
бозор	бозорхо	markets
мактаб	мактабхо	schools
вазорат	вазоратхо	ministries
сафорат	сафоратхо	embassies
	Suffix "-on"	
модар	модарон	mothers
муаллим	муаллимон	teachers
сафир	сафирон	ambassadors
духтур	духтурон	doctors
	Suffix "-zon"	
сароянда	сарояндагон	singers
нависанда	нависандагон	writers
дўзанда	дўзандагон	seamstresses
	Suffix "-ën"	
бобо	бобоён	grandfathers
амрикой	амрикоиён	Americans
	Suffix "-6011"	
хинду	хиндувон	Indians

Notes:

1. The suffix "-xo" is universal and can be used with all nouns: 6030p-6030pxo, коргаркоргархо, нависанда-нависандахо, бобо-бобохо, хинду-хиндухо.

2. The suffix "-ou" is used with nouns for rational beings and professions: odam-odamon,

3. The suffixes "-zon", "-60", and "-ën" are variants of the suffix "-on": "-zon" is used following the vowel "a" (e.g. nasucandazon), "-ë μ " following the vowels "o" and " \bar{u} " (e.g. бобоён, амрикоиён), and "-вон" following the vowel "v" (e.g. хиндувон).

4. In colloquial Tajiki, the plural suffix is pronounced /-o/ after a consonant (e.g. odanxo /odamo/, муаллимхо /muallimo/) and /-ho/ after a yowel (e.g. xonaxo /khonaho/,

xundyxo /hinduho/).

5. In literary Tajiki, certain kinds of Arabic plural nouns are also used. The ways of forming Arabic plurals is comparatively complex and complicated. For more information, see the section "A Brief Introduction to Tajiki Grammar" at the end of the book.

"Acm" and "Xacm"

Acm and the negative form necm or, colloquially, ne is the equivalent of "is" in English. It is used to make statements about things:

Ин китоб аст. This is a book.

Китоб дар руйи миз аст. The book is on the table.

Ин падари ман аст. This is my father.

Номи модарам Хабиба аст. My mother's name is Habiba.

Падарам дар хона аст. My father is at home

In spoken Tajiki, acm is not usually said:

Ин китоб. This is a book. Ин модари ман. This is my mother. Номи ман Саид. My name's Said.

Xacm, the negative form of which is also *necm*, is the equivalent of "there is" in English. It is used to make statements about the existence of things. (It should not to be confused with the rare third form the verb by dan mentioned earlier in this grammar section):

- Who is (there) at home? Дар хона кй хаст? Дар хона падарам хаст. - My father is (there) at home. - Is there any bread?

- Hoн *хаст*?

- Yes, there is. / No, there isn't - Xa, xacm. / He, necm.

The word xacm also sometimes appears in a plural form, xacmand, when used to talk about people:

My parents are (there) at home. Дар хона падару модарам *хастанд*.

However, plural nouns for non-living things simply use "xacm":

Дар магоза нон ва панир хаст. There is bread and cheese in the shop.

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

1.	Insert the correct form of the verb "кор кардан" in the spaces () below:
	Example: Мо дар донишгох кор мекунем.

а. Мо дар донишгох

b. Шумо дар кучо ... ?

с. Онхо дар вазорат

d. Падару модарам дар беморхона

е. Хохарам дар мактаб

f. Чон дар сафорат

g. Шумо дар бонк ...?

2. Give positive and negative responses to the following questions:

a) Example: Шумо духтур?

 $\Rightarrow Xa$, ман духтур.

⇒ Не, ман духтур не, ман мухандис.

а. У муаллим (аст)?

b. Онхо хукукшинос?

с. Шумо ронанда?

d. Онхо кор мекунанд?

е. Ту мехонй?

f. Бародарони ту коргаранд?

b) Example: Ин мактаб (acm)?

⇒ Ха, ин мактаб (аст).

⇒ Не, ин мактаб не, ин донишгох (аст).

с. Ин бонк?

а. Ин вазорат? d. Ин магоза? g. Он бозор аст? b. Ин ширкат аст? е. Вай сафорат аст?

f. Он мактаб аст?

3. Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings: Example: Ман дар Лушанбе зиндаги мекунам.

ман		Душанбе	
онхо		Лондон	
шумо		Вашингтон	
мо		Маскав	
$ar{\mathtt{y}}$	70.00	Точикистон	ann darii Makan
Ахмад	дар	Амрико	зиндагй мекун
Филипп		Инглистон	
ту		Италия	
падарам		Хучанд	
модарат		Бадахшон	

4. Change the following nouns into the plural:

а. Коргари хуб.

b. Хохари ту.

с. Тарчумони сафорат. f. Иухтури беморхона.

d. Корманди ширкат. g. Муаллимаи мактаб. е. Бародари ман.

h. Донишчуйи донишгох.

5. Answer the following questions:

а. Шумо дар кучо кор мекунед?

b. Падари Шумо дар кучо зиндагй мекунад?

с. Модаратон кор мекунад?

d. Шумо кор мекунед ё мехонед?

е. Онхо дар кучо зиндагй мекунанд? f. Духтурон дар кучо кор мекунанд?

g. Муаллими онхо дар кучо зиндагй мекунад?

-	Insert the word "acm" or "xacm" in the spaces () below, as appropriate:
λ.	insert the word uch or xuch in the spaces () below, as appropriate.
	English Managara Managara van Managara
	Examples: Ин хона <u>аст</u> . Дар магоза нон <u>хаст</u> ?

а. Йн падари ман	
------------------	--

b. Падарам дар хона

- с. Дар хона кй ... ? е. Китоб дар кучо ...?
- d. Дар хона бародарам f. Китоб дар руйи миз
- g. Дар магоза шакар ...?
- h. Xa, дар магоза шакар
- 7. Fill in the following spaces (...) with appropriate words from the vocabulary list for lesson

Example: Салима \underline{dyxmyp} acm. \overline{y} дар $\underline{beмopxoнa}$ кор мекунад.

- а. Ман Ман дар ... кор мекунам.
- b. Бародарам \hat{y} дар ... кор мекунад.
- с. Рашид У дар ... кор мекунад.
- d. Mo... Мо дар... мехонем.
- е. Шумо ...? Шумо дар ... кор мекунед?

8. Read the following text and express the same information in English:

Номи ман Томас аст. Ихтисоси ман меъмор аст. Ман дар ташкилоти байналмилали кор мекунам. Холо дар Точикистон зиндаги мекунам.

Ман падару модар ва як бародар дорам. Падарам духтур аст. У дар беморхона кор мекунад. Модарам муаллима аст. Вай дар мактаб кор мекунад. Онхо дар Берлин зиндаги мекунанд. Номи бародарам Марк аст. Марк мухандис аст. У дар Амрико кор ва зиндаги мекунад.

9. Read the proverbs below. Memorise any that you might be able to use in conversation: A voung man can easily learn forty

Ба як чавонмард чил хунар кам.	professions.3
Панч панчааш хунар аст.	He's a Jack of all trades.4
Қадри зар заргар бидонад.	A goldsmith knows the value of gold.
Сад задани сўзангар – як задани оханг	ap. A hundred strokes of a needleworker is like one stroke of an ironworker.
Ч аври устод бех аз мехри падар.	The injustice of an instructor is better than the loving kindness of a father.
Аз бекор – хама безор.	Nobody needs idleness.
Аз бекорй – кадукорй.	It's better to plant pumpkins than to be idle.
Кор кунй, рохат меёбй.	If you work, you'll find ease.
Кори шаб – хандаи руз.	Day-work is better than night-work.5

5 Literally: "Night work is the cause of the day's laughter."

САНЧИШ

QUIZ

 Give answers to the following questions: – Ихтисоси Шумо чй? 	6. – Расул дар кучо зиндагй мекунад?
 2. – Падари Шумо дар кучо кор мекунанд?	 7. – Духтурон дар кучо кор мекунанд?
 3. – Ӯ духтур аст?	 8. – Дар хона кӣ ҳаст?
4. – Шумо кор мекунед?	 9. – Бародарони ў дар кучо зиндагй мекунанд?
 5. – Онхо дар кучо мехонанд?	 10. – Ў кӣ? (кист?)
2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the	•
1 ? - Ха, ман кор мекунам. 2 ?	6. – ? – Ха, дар магоза нон хаст. 7. – ?
- Ман муаллим. 3 ?	- Ин китоб аст. 8. – ?
 Модарам дар Канада зиндагй мекунад. 	– Не, ў духтур не, ў мухандис аст.
4. – ?	9. – ?
- Fайрат дар донишгох мехонад.5 ?	– Номи бародарам Довуд аст. 10. – ?
- Ха, ў сафир аст.	– Ӯ дар шахр зиндагӣ мекунад.
2.26 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1.	

- 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson four and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.
- 4. Write a description about yourself similar to that in exercise 8.

³ Literally: "Forty jobs is not too much for a young man."

⁴ Literally: "Each of his five fingers has a different profession."

Дарси 5

Lesson 5

Хона – Хавлй – Бог

House - Courtyard - Garden

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

Homes in Tajikistan are generally of two kinds: traditional houses and apartments. Traditional houses, $\chi aen\bar{u}$, are usually privately-owned, have a courtyard or garden, and consist of several rooms. More than one family usually live in such a house – parents with their sons and daughter-in-laws, for example. Walls of traditional houses are normally constructed out of mud, bricks, or cement. Rooms are typically arranged around a central courtyard, each having its own hallway or anteroom. In front of them, there will often be a veranda, which also serves as a place for sitting and resting during the summer. It is not the custom of people in the East, Tajiks included, to sleep in a Western-style bed (known as a ram or, by the Russian word, $\kappa poeam$). Instead, they make their bed from quilts ($\kappa poeam$). During the day, the $\kappa poeam$ are piled on top of a chest ($candy\kappa$) and covered with a special blanket; this pile is called a maxmon. For storing household items, shelves are built, sometimes as a cupboard set into the wall.

To heat rooms in the winter, Tajiks traditionally use a $candan\bar{u}$. A $candan\bar{u}$ is a low, square table under which they place their feet in a special pit. In the middle of this pit there is a small hole for placing coal-dust, which burns slowly and without a flame. Above the $candan\bar{u}$, a $\kappa\bar{p}pna$ is laid and the Tajiks sit with their legs beneath it. Naturally, these days, electric heaters and coal burners are also used. Like other Central Asian people groups, Tajiks usually sit on long, narrow quilts ($\kappa\bar{p}pnaua$). The tablecloth may either be laid on the floor or on a low national table.

Houses are normally single-storied, although many also have a basement. As time goes on, two-storied houses are also increasingly being built. **Xasnū** are built very close together in and around cities and are frequently semi-detached, so that the walls of the **xasnū** are often shared with those of neighbours. People often grow fruit trees and plant produce such as cucumbers, tomatoes, peppers, chillies, and herbs in their **xasnū**.

Apartment blocks are mostly found in cities. In such buildings there are a number of apartments, in each of which a different family usually lives. Apartments typically consist of up to five rooms.

ЛУҒАТ

VOCABULARY

ҳавлй	house, garden, yard	квартира	apartment
хона	house, room; apartment	дахлез	anteroom; room leading to another
утоқ	room	ошёна	floor, storey
дар	door	дарвоза	gate
девор	wall	тиреза	window
шифт	ceiling	фарш	floor
таххона [подвал] і	cellar, basement	[чердак]	attic, loft
бом	roof	айвон	verandah

¹ Words shown in square brackets are Russian words used in colloquial Tajiki.

зина, остона	step	зинапоя	stairs
бог	garden	хавз	pool (swimming)
куфл /qulf/	lock	калид	kev
гараж	garage		<i>Rey</i>
мехмонхона	living room	диван	sofa
курсй	chair	курсии нарм	armchair
миз	table	мизи миллй	low national table
қолин	carpet, rug (for floor or wall)	палас/палос	synthetic carpet, rug (for floor)
парда	curtain	сурат	picture
барқ	electricity	гармкунак	radiator, heater
радио	radio	телевизор	television
магнитофон	tape player	видеомагнитофон/	video, VCR
чевони китоб	bookcase	видео	
раф	book-shelf	шамъ	candle
гулдон	vase		
хонаи хоб	bedroom	соати зангдор	alarm-clock
чарог / лампочка	lamp	соати девори	wall-clock
рахти хоб/чойгах	Tajiki bed	гахвора	cradle
курпа	quilt	курпача	quilt for sitting on
болишт	pillow, cushion	чилди болишт	pillow-case
кампал [одеяло]	blanket	рӯҷо	sheet
чевони либос /	chest-of-drawers	либосовезак	coat-hanger; coat-
комод		!	hook; wardrobe
мизи ороиш	dressing-table	оина	mirror
аз	from	; ба	to
аз бо	with	бе	without
	3	1	without for
бо то дар	with to; until; as far as in, at	бе барои дар даруни	without for in, inside
бо то	with to; until; as far as	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери	without for in, inside under
бо то дар дар болои дар рўйи	with to; until; as far as in, at above on	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни	without for in, inside under between
бо то дар дар болои дар рўйи дар тарафи рости	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи	without for in, inside under between to the left of
бо то дар дар болои дар рўйи	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind
бо то дар дар болои дар рўйи дар тарафи рости	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one – first	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеїом	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one – first three – third	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one – first three – third five – fifth	бе барои дар даруни дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду – дуюм чор – чорум шаш – шашум	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеіом панч – панчум ҳафт /haf/ – ҳафтум	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду – дуюм чор – чорум шаш – шашум ҳашт/hash/ – хаштум	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two - second four - fourth six - sixth eight - eighth
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеіом панч – панчум ҳафт /haf/ – ҳафтум нуҳ /nü/ – нуҳум	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум шаш — шашум хашт /hash/ — хашгум дах /da/ — дахум	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth ten – tenth
бо то дар дар болои дар рўйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеіом панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум чўх /пü/ – нўхум зиндагй кардан	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар таги / дар зери дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум щаш — шашум ҳашт /hash/ — ҳаштум дах /da/ — дахум ичора гирифтан	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth to rent
бо то дар дар болои дар рўйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеіом панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нўх /пü/ – нўхум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав)	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар таги / дар зери дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум шаш — шашум ҳашт /hash/ — ҳаштум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист)	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth to rent to stay; to stop
бо то дар дар болои дар рўйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеіом панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум чўх /пü/ – нўхум зиндагй кардан	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in,	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар таги / дар зери дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум щаш — шашум ҳашт /hash/ — ҳаштум дах /da/ — дахум ичора гирифтан	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth to rent to stay; to stop to go out, to come
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /nü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (даро)	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in, to go in	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум шаш — шашум хашт /hash/ — хаштум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро)	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth ten – tenth to rent to stay; to stop out, to come out, to get out
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /nü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (даро) нишастан (нишин,	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in,	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду – дуюм чор – чорум шаш – шашум хашт /hash/ – хаштум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро)	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth ten – tenth to stay; to stop to go out, to come out, to get out to sleep; to go to
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /nü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (даро) нишастан (нишин, шин)	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in, to go in to sit	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду – дуюм чор – чорум шаш – шашум хашт /hash/ – хаштум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро) хобидан (хоб) / хоб кардан	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two - second four - fourth six - sixth eight - eighth ten - tenth to stay; to stop to sleep; to go to sleep
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /пü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (нишин, шин) тоза кардан	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in, to sit to clean	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду – дуюм чор – чорум шаш – шашум хашт /hash/ – хаштум дах /da/ – дахум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро) хобидан (хоб) / хоб кардан шона кардан	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two - second four - fourth six - sixth eight - eighth ten - tenth to stay; to stop to go out, to come out, to get out to sleep; to go to sleep to comb
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /пü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (нишин, шин) тоза кардан гуш кардан	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in, to go in to sit to clean to listen	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду – дуюм чор – чорум шаш – шашум хашт /hash/ – хаштум дах /da/ – дахум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро) хобидан (хоб) / хоб кардан шона кардан тамошо кардан	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth ten – tenth to rent to stay; to stop to go out, to come out, to get out to sleep; to go to sleep to comb to watch
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /пü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (нишин, шин) тоза кардан гуш кардан даргирондан	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in, to go in to sit to clean to listen to switch on; to turn	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум шаш — шашум хашт /hash/ — хаштум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро) хобидан (хоб) / хоб кардан шона кардан тамошо кардан хомуш кардан /	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth ten – tenth to rent to stay; to stop to go out, to come out, to get out to sleep; to go to sleep to comb to watch to switch off; to turn
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /nü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (нишин, шин) тоза кардан гуш кардан даргирондан (даргирон)	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in, to go in to sit to clean to listen to switch on; to turn on	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар таги / дар зери дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум щаш — шашум хашт /hash/ — хашгум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро) хобидан (хоб) / хоб кардан шона кардан тамошо кардан хомуш кардан / куштан (куш)	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth ten – tenth to rent to stay; to stop to go out, to come out, to get out to sleep; to go to sleep to comb to watch to switch off; to turn off
бо то дар дар болои дар руйи дар тарафи рости дар кунчи як – якум се – сеюм панч – панчум хафт /haf/ – хафтум нух /пü/ – нухум зиндагй кардан рафтан (рав) даромадан (нишин, шин) тоза кардан гуш кардан даргирондан	with to; until; as far as in, at above on to the right of in the corner of one - first three - third five - fifth seven - seventh nine - ninth to live to go to enter, to come in, to go in to sit to clean to listen to switch on; to turn	бе барои дар даруни дар таги / дар зери дар мобайни дар тарафи чапи дар пушти ду — дуюм чор — чорум шаш — шашум хашт /hash/ — хаштум ичора гирифтан истодан (ист) баромадан (баро) хобидан (хоб) / хоб кардан шона кардан тамошо кардан хомуш кардан /	without for in, inside under between to the left of behind two – second four – fourth six – sixth eight – eighth ten – tenth to rent to stay; to stop to go out, to come out, to get out to sleep; to go to sleep to comb to watch to switch off; to turn

додан (дех) ²	to give	чогах андохтан/ партофтан	to lay the bed
шахр	city, town	кишлок / дех / деха	village
хиёбон	avenue	кўча	street
сохибхона	house owner	ичорашин	lodger
танхо / тока	alone	мустахкам	stable, firm, strong
калон	big; large	майда / хурд	small
васеъ	wide	зебо	beautiful, smart
равшан	light; bright	торик	dark

СӮХБАТХО

DIALOGUES

<i>1</i> .	
– Салом, Манучехр!	– Hello Manuchehr.
- Салом, Илхомчон!	– Hi Ilhomjon.
– Чй хел ту, нагз-мй?	– How are you? Are you OK?
Рахмат, чўра, худат чй хел?	- Yes, fine thanks. How are you?
– Бад не, мешавад.	- Not bad.
 Илҳомчон, ту ҳоло дар кучо зиндагй мекунй? 	– Ilhomjon, where are you living at the moment?
 Ман ҳоло дар Душанбе зиндагй мекунам. 	– I'm currently living in Dushanbe.
– Хонаи Шумо дар кучо?	- Where's your house?
– Дар кучаи Зарафшон.	– In Zarafshon St.
 Дар ҳавлй зиндагй мекунй ё дар хона? 	– Do you live in a courtyard or an apartment?
 Дар хонаи сеутока. 	- I live in a three-room apartment.
– Хонаи Шумо дар ошёнаи ³ чандум?	– Which floor do you live on?
– Дар ошёнаи дуюм.	– On the second floor.
2.	
- Зулайхо, хонаи Шумо ч й хел?	– Zulaiho, what's your house like?
– Булайдо, хонай Шумо чи хол: – Нагз.	- It's nice.
– Чанд уток дорад?	- How many rooms does it have?
– Чор.	- Four.
– Шумо дар хона телевизор доред?	- Have you got a television at home?
– Албатта.	- Of course.
– Радио чи?	- What about a radio?
Радио хам дорем.	- We've also got a radio.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	We he made government
3.	TT 1: 1 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1: 1
 — Ҳалим, ту дар шаҳр зиндагӣ мекунӣ ё дар қишлоқ? 	– Halim, do you live in a city or in a village?
 – Ман дар шахр зиндагй мекунам. 	– I live in a city.
– Падару модарат чй?	– And your parents?

² The present tense stem of the verb dodan is dex; however, this is only used in the imperative; for other forms of the verb the form dux is used. E.g. китобро dex but китобро медихам.

- Падару модарам дар кишлок зиндагй мекунанд.
- Онхо хавлй доранд?
- Ха, хавлии калон доранд.
- Хавлй бог дорад?
- Ха, як боги зебо дорад.
- Ту бо кй зиндагй мекунй?
- Ман тока.

- Китоб дар кучост?
- Китоб дар руйи миз аст.
- Колин дар кучост?
- Колин дар руйи фарш аст.
- Чевони китоб дар кучост?
- Чевони китоб дар тарафи рости хона.
- Телевизор дар кучо истодааст⁴?
- Телевизор дар болои миз истодааст.

- Адиба, хонаи Шумо чанд уток дорад?
- Хонаи мо чор уток дорад.
- Мехмонхонай Шумо калон аст?
- Ха, калон.
- Он чанд дару чанд тиреза дорад?
- Мехмонхона як дару се тиреза дорад.
- Дар мехмонхона чихо доред?
- Як миз, шаш курсй, чевони китоб.
- Телевизор хам доред?
- Албатта.

- Шамсиддин, салом!
- Салом, Икромчон!
- Шумо нагз-мӣ?
- Рахмат, мешавад. Шумо чй?
- Икромчон, Шумо падару модар доред?
- Xa.
- Хохару бародар чй?
- Ман се бародару як хохар дорам.
- Номи онхо чи?
- Номи бародаронам Имомчон, Камолчон ва Нозимчон, номи хохарам Норй.
- Шумо хама дар як хона зиндагй мекунед?

- My parents live in a village.
- Do they have a house?
- Yes, they have a big house.
- Does it have a garden?
- Yes, it's got a pretty garden.
- Who do you live with?
- I live alone.
- Where is the book?
- The book is on the table.
- Where is the carpet?
- The carpet is on the floor.
- Where is the bookcase?
- The bookcase is on the right side of the room.
- Where is the television?
- The television is on the table.
- Adiba, how many rooms has your house got?
- It's got four rooms.
- Is your living-room large?
- Yes, it's quite big.
- How many doors and windows has it got?
- The living-room's got one door and three windows.
- What's in the living-room?
- One table, six chairs, and a bookcase.
- Have you also got a television?
- Of course.
- Hi Shamsiddin.
- Hi Ikromjon.
- How are you?
- Fine, thanks. And you?
- Not bad.
- Ikromion, are your parents still alive⁵?
- Yes.
- Have you got any brothers and sisters?
- I've got three brothers and one sister.
- What are their names?
- My brothers' names are Imomjon, Kamoljon and Nozimjon, and my sister's name is Nori.
- Do you all live in one house?
- ⁴ *Mcmodaacm* can be used instead of acm for objects that stand upright; this question thus means the same as

³ Floors of a building are counted in Tajiki in the same way as in American; i.e. the floor at which a person enters a building is the "first" floor (cf. "ground" floor in British English), the next floor up is the "second" floor (cf. "first" floor in British English), etc.

[&]quot;Телевизор дар кучост?" 5 Literally: "Do you have a father and mother?"

42 A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

- Не, мо ду хона дорем, дар як хона падару модарам бо бародарону хохарам зиндаги мекунанд. Дар хонаи дигар ману занам зиндаги мекунем.
- Магар Шумо зан доред?
- Ха. Шумо чй?
- Не, ман хануз мучаррад.

- Юсуф, Шумо холо дар кучо зиндагй мекунел?
- Ман холо дар Душанбе зиндагй мекунам.
- Хонаи Шумо чанд уток дорад?
- Хонаи ман сеутока.

8.

- Падару модаратон дар кучо зиндагй мекунанд?
- Онхо дар Фаронса зиндагй мекунанд.
- Дар хавлй зиндагй мекунанд?
- Ха, онхо хавлии зебо доранд. Дар руйи хавли бог, хавз, гараж доранд.

9.

- Биёел шинос мешавем: номи ман Искандар. Номи Шумо чй?
- Хеле мамнунам. Номи ман Диловар.
- Ман хам шодам. Диловар, Шумо дар кучо зиндагй мекунед?
- Ман дар Хучанд зиндагй мекунам. Шумо чй?
- Ман дар Дущанбе.
- Шумо дар хавлй зиндагй мекунед?
- Хавлии Шумо чанд хона дорад?
- Мо ду хонаю ду дахлез дорем. Шумо
- Мо лар хонаи панчутока зиндаг \bar{u} мекунем. We live in a house with five rooms.

- No, we have two apartments. My parents live in one with my brothers and sister. My wife and I live in the other.
- Are vou really married⁶?
- Yes. What about you?
- No, I'm still single.
- Yusuf, where do you live (now)?
- I live in Dushanbe.
- How many rooms has your house got?
- My house has three rooms.
- Where do your parents live?
- They live in France.
- Do they live in a house with a yard?
- Yes, they have a beautiful yard. It's got a garden, a pond, and a garage.
- We've not met: my name is Iskandar. What's your name?
- Pleased to meet you. My name is Dilovar.
- I'm pleased to meet you too. Dilovar, where do vou live?
- I live in Khujand. And vou?
- I live in Dushanbe.
- Do you live in a house with a yard?
- Yes. I do.
- How many rooms has it got?
- We've got two main rooms and two anterooms. What about you?

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Prepositions

There are two sorts of prepositions in Tajiki: simple and compound. Simple prepositions are single words: e.g. a3, 6a, 6o, 6e, dap, mo, and 6apou. Compound prepositions are usually formed from the simple prepositions dap, 6a or as in conjunction with additional words showing the position, as shown in the following table. In general, dap is used when referring to a person or thing that is located in the place indicated by the preposition, whereas δa is used when referring to the movement of a person or thing in the direction indicated; as is

used to denote motion across, from, or through somewhere. Examples are given below, contrasting the different forms derived from bono.

Ошёнаи боло бисёр торик аст. Болои гахвора рүйпүши зебо хаст. The top floor is very dark.

There's a beautiful cover over the

cradle.

We've got an attic above this room. Дар болои ин хона чердак дорем. The bird sat on the roof.

Парранда ба болои бом нишаст. Г⊽штро аз болои биринч мемонем.

We spread the meat over the rice.

The simple prepositional form lacking ∂ap or δa is used in the same way as the ∂ap compound preposition, and thus indicates location. So, in the preceding examples, the sentences, "Дар болои гахвора руйпуши зебо хаст," and "Болои ин хона чердак дорем" аге equally possible.

Construction of prepositions

Base word	Preposition	Meaning	Compound prepositions
рў(й)	рӯйи	on	дар/ба/аз рўйи
назд	назди	near	дар/ба/аз назди
пахлу(й)	пахлуи	beside; next to	дар/ба/аз пахлуй
лаб	лаби	beside; by (an edge)	дар/ба/аз лаби
сӯ(й)	сӯйи	to, towards	дар/ба/аз сўйи
боло	болои	above; on top of	дар/ба/аз болои
поён	поёни	at the bottom of	дар/ба/аз поёни
зер	зери	under; beneath	дар/ба/аз зери
таг	таги	under; beneath	дар/ба/аз таги
берун	беруни	out; outside	дар/ба/аз беруни
дарун	даруни	in; inside	дар/ба/аз даруни
пеш	пеши	in front of	дар/ба/аз пеши
пушт	пушти	behind	дар/ба/аз пушти
акиб	акиби	behind	дар/ба/аз ақиби
кафо	қафои	behind	дар/ба/аз қафои
мобайн	мобайни	in the centre of	дар/ба/аз мобайни
байн	байни	between	дар/аз байни
•	1	on∕to the side of	дар/ба/аз тарафи
тараф	тарафи	on/to the right/left of	дар/ба/аз тарафи рости/чапи
гирд	гирди	around	дар/ба гирди
кунч	кунчи	in the corner	дар/ба/аз кунчи

The Direct Object Marker "-po"

The inflectional suffix "-po" is frequently used in Tajiki and identifies direct objects – that is, the person or thing that a verb acts upon; in English, the direct object usually follows the verb:

Туро д \overline{v} ст медорам 7 . М⊽ятро шона кун.

I love you. Comb your hair.

⁶ Literally: "Do you really have a wife?"

⁷ Note that while the verb douman does not take the prefix "me-" in the present-future tense when the verb stands on its own (and thus means "to have"), it does take the usual present-future tense prefix "me-" when it acts as an auxiliary verb (i.e. when it is combined with a noun or adjective to form a compound verb). For more on compound verbs, see lesson nine.

(For more information about prepositions and the direct object marker "-po", see the section "A Brief Introduction to Tajiki Grammar" at the end of the book.)

Question Particles

Various words are used to form questions. The most frequently used are the following:

Question particles	English equivalents	Examples	Translation
TC=0 / TC 0*	Who?	Ин кй?	Who is this?
Кӣ? / Киҳо?*	vv no?	Онхо кихо?	Who are they?
YY=0 / YY 9*	What?	Вай чӣ?	What is that?
Ч¤? / Чихо?*	vv nai?	Инхо чихо?	What are these?
Чанд?	How many?	Ту чанд бародар дорй?	How many brothers do you have?
Чӣ қадар?	How much?	Чй қадар орд дорй?	How much flour have you got?
Кай?	When?	Кай ба хона меравй?	When are you going home?
Кадом?	Which?	Кадом китобро дўст медорй?	Which book do you like?
Чаро? / Барои чй?	Why?	Чаро ту кор намекунй?	Why aren't you working?
Дар кучо?	Where? (in)	$ar{\mathtt{y}}$ дар кучо кор мекунад?	Where does he work?
Ба кучо?	Where? (to)	Онхо ба кучо мераванд?	Where are they going?
Аз кучо?	Where? (from)	Ту аз кучо?	Where are you from?
Аз кай?	Since when?/ How long?	Аз кай Салим дар ин чо зиндагй мекунад?	How long has Salim lived here?
То кай?	Until when? / How long?	То кай Шумо дар Душанбе меистед?	How long are you going to stay in Dushanbe?
Чандум?†	Which? / What?	Шумо дар ошёнаи чандум зиндагй мекунед?	On which floor do you live?

Notes:

- * In Tajiki, the question particles $\kappa \bar{u}$ and $u\bar{u}$ also have plural forms:
 - Дар хона $\kappa \bar{u}$ хаст?
- Who is at home?
- Дар ин чо $\kappa u x o$ зиндагй мекунанд? <u>Who</u> lives here? (plural)
- Ин *чй*?

- What is it?

- Ту чихо дорй?

- What have you got? (plural)
- † The question particle *uandym* is used to ask about the order of things:
 - Имруз чандум?

- What is the date today?

- Ймрўз якум.

- Today is the first.

- Ту дар синфи чандум мехонй?
- In what year are you studying?
- Ман дар синфи дахум мехонам.
- I'm studying in the tenth year.

Imperatives

In Tajiki, imperatives are formed from the present tense verb stem and can be singular or plural. Only second person forms exist, a singular form for the second person singular (my form) and a plural form for the second person plural (*wymo* form):

Хон! - Хонед!

- Read!

Pas! - Pased!

-Go!

E.g.

Китобро хои!

- Read the book! (speaking to one person)

- Go home! (speaking to more than one person) Ба хона равед! In colloquial Tajiki, the suffix "-emon" is also used for the second person plural:

Гиретон. - Help vourselves.

Sometimes the more literary prefix "6u-" is used with imperatives:

Бихон! – Бихонед!

- Read!

Бирав! – Биравед!

- Go!

The negative imperative is formed by adding the negative prefix "na-": Ин корро накун! - Don't do that! Stop that!

In literary Tajiki, the prefix "ma-" is also used to form the negative:

Марав аз ман!

- Don't leave me!

Faм мах vp!

- Don't worry!

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

1. Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings: Example: Мо ду колин дорем.

ман ту ў Давлат мо	як ду се чор	хона ҳавлй диван қолин	дор
, ,	чор панч	қолин радио телевизор	

2. Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings: Example: \overline{Y} дар ошёнай сеюм зиндагй мекунад.

ў ман ту Шумо Собиру Рахим мо онхо Фарангис	дар ошёнаи	якум дуюм сеюм чорум панчум шашум хаштум дахум	зиндагй мекун
--	------------	---	---------------

3. Fill in the following spaces (...) with appropriate prepositions:

Example: Китоб дар руйц миз аст.

- а. Диван ... уток аст.
- b. Миз ... уток аст.
- с. Қолин ... фарш аст.
- d. Хавз ... хавлй аст.
- е. Соати зангдор ... хонаи хоб аст. f. Парда ... тиреза аст.
- g. Хонаи мо ... хиёбони Рудакй аст. h. Телевизор ... миз аст.

13. - Дар даруни чевон чи хаст?

Topan'

12. - Хонаи Муниса айвон дорад?

9. – Сайфидлин чанд хона дорад?

Komepy Toxnp 6a kyyo mepabaha?

Оох итхьед днь томуШ поох пьноХ – .01

%. – Мехмонхонаи ў равшан аст?	I. Give answers to the following questions:
$ZI \cap \widetilde{\mathcal{O}}$	<i>тићну</i> Э
The lion at home is a stranger in the square.	. Ондвянодівм маэшьно X
A house and carpets – a man and clothes.	Хонаю палос, одаму либос.
Whatever is said at home shouldn't be said is ablic.	. Гапи хона ба бозор рост намеояд.
The wall has mice – and mice have ears.	Девор муш дорад, муш – г \overline{y} ш (дорад).
I slammed the door and the wall cracked.	Дарро задам, девор кафид.
at you might be able to use in conversation: You don't buy a house, you buy your neighbours.	8. Read the proverbs below. Memorise any th Xona haxap, xamcoa xap.
דענצטע כ: ואסמצג' רסמעאמנס מעס רסגמגע	

C	to don unoumy	Propries August Howens
-		
-	 Конаи ў чанд .	г уток дорад?
- · I	- шумо хона до	(oberts

мскλнэ<u>п</u>; 3. - Миралй дар ошенаи чандум зиндагй

4. – Хавлии Шумо калон аст ё хурд?

6. – Хонап падару модари Шумо дар 5. – Телевизор дар кучост?

клаосц

7. – Онхо чанд мизу курсй доранд? 14. – Дар хона кихо хастанд?

2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the following answers:

 Чевон дар кунчи хона аст. -Ха, мо магнитофон дорем. Бародарам як диван дорад.

зинтуци мскунуп. - He, хонаи мо чор уток дорад.

Турсун бо падару модараш дар хавлй

7 ... - .11 Писарам дар Маскав зиндаги

мекλнуп.

. дя дару ду тиреза дорад. Мо гараж надорем.

- Ин хонаи устоди ман аст. - Миз дар мобайни хона аст.

"That is, "He's strong in his own home, but afraid in the street."

Ехатріє: дарро (куфя кардан) 🗢 <u>дарро куфя кун</u>! 4. Change the following verbs into the imperative and make sentences using them:

.(недемодьб) внох еА .b b. Ба хона (даромадан).

 е раркро (хомуш кардан). f. Бахона (рафтан). с. Телевизорро (тамошо кардан).

5. Use appropriate adjectives to describe the following nouns and make sentences using them:

Ехатріє: хона 🗢 хонан калон. 🗢 Мо хонан калон дорем.

равшан BUCGP хурд купон 3600 eqlectives: торик ENM қавий уток :sunou караж копин ноайь

Хонаи хоби ман як дару як тиреза дорад. Он хам зебо ва равшан аст.

хоб, болои курпа кампали зебо хаст. Дар назди рахти хоб мизи ороиш истодааст.

истодааст. Дар як кунчи хона чевони китоб истодааст. Дар он бисер китобхо хастанд. диван, ду курсин нарм аст. Дар руйн фарш колини зебо хаст. Дар руйн миз телевизор

Мехмонхонаи ман капон, васеъ ва равшан аст. Дар ин уток як миз, ду курсй, як

як хонаи дуутока дорам. Хонаи ман дар хиёбони $P\overline{y}$ дак \overline{n} аст. Хонаи ман утоки хоб ва хукукшинос аст. Ман дар ташкилоти байналмилалй кор мекунам. Ман дар Душанбе

Ман холо дар Точикистон, дар шахри Душанбе зиндатй мекунам. Ихтисоси ман

мехонад. Падару модарам бо Андруй ва Рибекка дар хавлии калон зиндагй мекунанд.

Андруй дар доништох мехонад. Хохарам Рибекка ном дорад. У хам дар доништох бародаронам Чорч ва Андруй аст. Чорч духтур аст. У дар бемористон кор мекунад.

Лондон зиндаги мекунанд. Падарам нафакахур ва модарам сохибхоназан вст. Номи хохар дорам. Номи падарам Мартин ва номи модарам Верена аст. Онхо дар шахри

Номи ман Мари аст. Оилаи мо калон аст. Ман падару модар, ду бародар ва як

Чорч зан ва як писар дорад. Онхо дар шахри Ливерпул зиндаги мекунанд.

Ман радио ва видеомагнитофон низ9 дорам. Мехмонхона як дару ду тиреза дорад.

Хонаи хоб хурд аст. Дар як кунчи он рахти хоби ман истодааст. Дар руйи рахти

р. Шумо дар кучо кор мекунед?

с. Шумо дар кучо зиндагй мекунед?

е. Хонаи Шумо чанд уток дорад?

Г. Шумо дар ошёнаи чандум зиндагй мекунед?

7. Read the following text and express the same information in English:

к. Дар хавлии Шумо бог хаст? Пумо чанд курси доред?

Г. Дар боги Шумо хавз хаст?

Пумо дар хона миз доред?

h. Шумо чанд тиреза доред?

g. Хонаи Шумо чанд дар дорад?

d. Шумо хона доред?

а. Номи Шумочи?

".001, vols" also, 100."

мехмонхона дорад.

Coxubxonasan means "housewife."

6. Answer the following questions:

A Xonau wo kanoh acm.

g. Китобро ба р \bar{y} йи миз (гузоштан).

а. Хонаро (тоза кардан).

<u>οσύδο κλφυ κλιεο;</u>

48 A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

мекунем.

6. - ...?

- Не, хавлии ў бог надорад.
7. - ...?

- Мо дар ошёнаи дуюм зиндагй

13. - ... ?
- Мархамат, дароед.

14. – ... ?

 Хонаи мо дар кучаи Исмоили Сомони аст.

- 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson five and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.
- 4. Write a description about yourself similar to that in exercise 7.

Дарси 6

Lesson 6

Хона – Хавлū – Бог (идома) House – Courtyard – Garden (continued)

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

Country people in Tajikistan mainly live in xasnū (houses with courtyards). Besides the main residence, xasnū also have other structures, such as storerooms, cattle-shed, manūp (bread-oven), and woodstoves. A manūp is round, is made from a special mud, has a chimney, and is used for baking bread. Tanūp are either built on the ground or stand on legs, and can be up to a couple of metres high. Bread baked in a manūp has a distinctive flavour. In Tajikistan and throughout Central Asia, there are various types of bread. Frequently, omauudon (wood-stoves for cooking outdoors) are built into the side of manūp. A semi-spherical cauldron – or dez – is placed above the omauudon for cooking food. Hez come in a range of sizes, the largest of which can be used to cook over 60 kilos of rice. As well as omauudon, vuok are also used to cook food outdoors. These are cylinders made out of thin metal; a fire is made inside the cylinder and a dez sits on top. Vuok come in a range of sizes to match those of dez and are very convenient as they can be carried from one place to another. Food is mostly cooked over firewood. National meals are usually cooked from start to finish in just one dez; the most common of these is ou (or, nanos). (More information about national dishes is given later.)

Most country people raise farmyard animals in their $\chi aen\bar{u}$ – for instance, cows, sheep, goats, and chickens. When it is hot, they put their livestock out to graze in the hills. In the morning they gather the animals from all the houses in a village and take them out to pasture, bringing them back in the evening. Such a group of animals is called a $no\partial a$ (herd). Usually a special person, the $no\partial a fon$ takes the animals out to graze, but in some places the men of the village take turns looking after them.

ЛУГАТ

VOCABULARY

хонаи дастшўй / хаммом ¹	bathroom	хало [туалет]² / хочатхона	toilet
дастшуяк	sink	душ	shower
[ванна]	bathtub	оина	mirror
об	water	чумаки об	tap
сачок / дастпоккун	towel	шампун	shampoo
собун	soap; washing-up liquid	хамири [пастаи] дандон	toothpaste
собуни чомашуй	laundry detergent; washing powder	чўткаи дандон	toothbrush
ришгирак	razor, shaver	теги алмос	razor blade
шустан (шу, шуй)	to wash	оббозй кардан	to bathe; to shower
душ кардан	to have a shower	хаммом кардан	to have a bath

Originally, xammom referred simply to public baths, but has come to be used for "bathroom" also.

² Words shown in square brackets are Russian words used in colloquial Tajiki.

кушодан (кушо)	to open	пўшидан (пўш)	to close
кушодан (кушо) махкам кардан	to open to close, to lock	куфл кардан	to lock
доштан (дор)	to hold	риш гирифтан	to shave
чакидан (чак)	to drip	хушк кардан	to dry
тоза	clean	; чиркин	dirty
тар	wet	хушк	drv
ошхона	kitchen	хурок / авкот	meal, food
табак	big national plate	табакча	plate
чойник	teapot; kettle	чойники барки	electric kettle
пиёла	national cup	чойчўш	metal kettle
коса	national bowl	кружка	mug
истакон	glass	кадах	wineglass
зарф	dishes	кошук	spoon
корд	knife	панча [вилка]	fork
дег	semi-spherical	кафгир	a large metal spatula
	cauldron	каструл	saucepan
тоба	frying pan	тахтача	cutting board
бонка /banka/	jar; tin	шиша	bottle
патнус / лаганд	tray	лаълй	small serving plate
тагора	baby bath; large bowl	чевон	cupboard
141.0 p.u	for dough, or for	миска / тагорача	bowl for washing
	washing	мошини чомашуй	washing machine
гўгирд	matches	дарзмол / газмол	iron
газ	gas; gas-stove	тафдон [духовка]	oven
гуштқимакунак	meat grinder, mincer	яхдон	refrigerator, fridge
элак	sieve {for flour etc.}	чанг	dust, dirt
чор ўб	broom	чангкашак	vacuum cleaner
ахлот	rubbish, trash	¦ сатили порӯб	wastepaper basket
чой дам кардан	to make/stew tea	нўшидан (нўш)	to drink
хўрдан (хўр)	to eat	чашидан (чаш)	to taste
пухтан (паз)	to cook, to bake	бирёндан (бирён) /	to fry
ч <u>ў</u> шондан (чушон)	to boil	бирён кардан /	
реза кардан	to chop, to slice	зирбондан (зирбон)	
шикастан (шикан)	to break into pieces	пора кардан	to cut into pieces
рўфтан (рўб)	to sweep	пур кардан	to fill
чўшонда	boiled	бирён	fried
гарм	hot	хунук	cold
ширгарм	luke warm	оханин	metal (adj)
чинй	china (adj.)	шишагин	glass (adj.)
пластмасй	plastic (adj.)	резина	rubber (adj.)
камтар / кам	little	бештар / беш	more
тез	quickly, fast	охиста	slowly
пур	full	лабрез	full, overflowing
бог	garden (with trees),	богбон	gardener
	country-house		
дарвоза	gate	девор	fence
дарахт	tree	мева	fruit
дарахти мевадор	fruit tree	дарахти бемева	tree without fruit
гул	flower	нихол	seedling
пал / хота	vegetable-garden	алаф / сабза	grass

- , , , ,		. ~	
нардбон /norbon/	ladder	канаб	rope
кафел	tile	шиша	glass (in window)
тахта	board	хишт	brick
санг	stone	, лой	mud, clay
кабат	layer	: ғалбер	sieve {for wheat etc.}
қубур [труба]	pipe	нали об	water outlet,
хавз	pool	[водопровод]	water-pipe
оташ / алав / алоб	fire, flame	оташдон /oshton/	wood-stove
танўр	bread-oven	анбор	store-room
асбоб	tool, instrument	оғил	stable, cattle-shed
болға	hammer	мех	nail, screw
appa	saw	табар	axe
анбӯр	pliers	калид	spanner
бел	spade	каланд	ĥoe
кат	an outside seating area	теша	a small tool used for
Kai	resembling a western		straightening or
		1	breaking pieces of wood
	double bed	i	orearing pieces of wood
COF	double bed	пишак / гурба	
Car	dog	пишак / гурба	cat
гов	dog cow	гўсфанд	cat sheep
гов буз	dog cow goat	гўсфанд хар	cat sheep donkey
гов буз парранда	dog cow goat bird	гўсфанд хар асп	cat sheep donkey horse
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till	гўсфанд хар асп парвариш кардан	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth)
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) /	dog cow goat bird	гўсфанд хар асп	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) /	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз)	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself)
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till to sow	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон)	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан чидан / чиндан	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон) об додан/мондан	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant to water
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан чидан / чиндан (чин)	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till to sow	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон)	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан чидан / чиндан (чин) омадан (ой)	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till to sow to pick to come	гўсфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон) об додан/мондан гов дўшидан (дўш)	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant to water to milk a cow
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан чидан / чиндан (чин) омадан (ой)	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till to sow to pick to come ripe	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон) об додан/мондан гов душидан (душ)	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant to water to milk a cow
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан чидан / чиндан (чин) омадан (ой)	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till to sow to pick to come ripe black	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон) об додан/мондан гов душидан (душ) хом сафед	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant to water to milk a cow unripe, green white
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан чидан / чиндан (чин) омадан (ой) пухта, пухтагй сиёх сурх	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till to sow to pick to come ripe	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон) об додан/мондан гов душидан (душ) хом сафед кабуд	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant to water to milk a cow unripe, green white blue
гов буз парранда шудгор кардан коридан (кор) / коштан (кор) / кишт кардан чидан / чиндан (чин) омадан (ой) пухта, пухтагй сиёх	dog cow goat bird to plough, to till to sow to pick to come ripe black	гусфанд хар асп парвариш кардан сабзидан (сабз) шинондан (шинон) об додан/мондан гов душидан (душ) хом сафед	cat sheep donkey horse to grow (smth) to germinate, grow (by itself) to plant to water to milk a cow unripe, green white

СӮҲБАТҲО

DIALOGUES

1. Conversation between a mother and her daughter [northern dialect]

- Фарангис? — Farangis?

– Лаббай³, бувачон. – Yes, Mum?

- Канй ту, ин чо биё! — Where are you? Come here.

- Мана ман, ин чо. — Here I am.

- Тудар кучо будй? — Where were you?
- Ман дар бог будам. — I was in the garden.
- Дар бог чй кор кардй? — What were you doing?
- Гул чидам. — I picked some flowers.

- Гул чидам. — I picked some flowers. — I picked some flowers. — Put them in the vase and wash the dishes.

³ Παόδαŭ ("yes") – This word is used when someone calls your name. It is sometimes also used when answering a telephone call.

- Хозир⁴ меш⊽ям.
- Баъд хонаро ҳам рӯб!
- Хуб шудаст.5

2.

- Салом. Парвона!
- Салом. Нодира!
- Ту аз кучо омадй?
- Аз хона.
- Дар хонаатон кй хаст?
- Модарам.
- Модарат чй кор мекунад?
- Модарам хурок мепазад. - Ту хам хурок мепази?
- Хан⊽з не. Ту чи?
- Ман гох-гох мепазам.

3.

- Дилшод, ту дар кучо зиндагй мекунй?
- Ман дар шахр зиндагй мекунам.
- Падару модарат чй?
- Падару модарам дар қишлоқ зиндагй мекунанд.
- Онхо хавлию бог доранд?
- Ха, доранд.
- Гову гусфанд хам доред?
- Ха, мо дар кишлок ду гову шаш гусфанд Yes, we've got two cows and six sheep in the дорем.
- Сагу гурба чй?
- Саг дорем, вале гурба надорем.
- **Yapo**?
- Мо гурбаро дўст намедорем.

- Точигул, Шумо дар хавлй зиндагй мекунел?
- Ха, мо хавлии калон дорем.
- Хавлии Шумо бог дорад?
- Ха, дорад.
- Шумо дар бог бисёр дарахт доред?
- Дар боги мо дах дарахти мевадор ва ду дарахти бемева хаст.
- Шумо пал хам доред?
- Не, надорем.

- Фарид, хонаи Шумо чанд уток дорад?
- Хонаи мо се уток дорад.
- Ошхонаи Шумо калон аст?

- I'll do it right now.
- Then sweep the house.
- OK.
- Hello, Parvona.
- Hi. Nodira
- Where are you coming from?
- From home
- Who's in your house?
- My mother
- What's your mother doing?
- My mother's preparing a meal.
- Can you cook too?
- Not vet. What about you?
- I cook occasionally.
- Dilshod, where do you live?
- I live in the city.
- And your parents?
- They live in the village.
- Have they got a garden?
- Yes, they have.
- Have you got cows and sheep, too?
- And dogs or cats?
- We have a dog, but not a cat.
- Why?
- We don't like cats.
- Tojigul, do you live in a house with a yard?
- Yes, we have a large vard.
- Has it got a garden?
- Yes. it has.
- Are there many trees in your garden?
- Our garden's got ten fruit trees and two other trees.
- Have you also got a vegetable-garden?
- No. we haven't.
- Farid, how many rooms are in your house?
- Our house has three rooms.
- Is your kitchen large?
- ⁴ Xosup in colloquial Tajiki this conveys the same sense as "right now, immediately."
- 5 "Xyo mydacm" or "Xyo manau" has the same meaning in colloquial Tajiki as "OK" in English, as used to show agreement.

- Xa.
- Дар ошхона Шумо чихо доред?
- Яхдон, чевон, газ ва дастшуяк дорем. Лар даруни чевон коса, чойник, пиёла, табақ ва табақчахои бисёр дорем.
- Мошини чомашуй хам доред?
- Не, надорем.
- Чангкашак чи?
- Дорем.

- Бо корд чй кор мекунанд?
- Бо корд реза мекунанд.
- Бо қошуқ чй кор мекунанд?
- Бо кошук хурок мехуранд.
- Бо панча чй?
- Бо панча хам.
- Хурокро дар чи мепазанд?
- Хурокро дар дег мепазанд.
- Нонро дар чй мепазанд?
- Нонро дар танур мепазанд.

- Салом. Саттор Рахимович!
- Салом, Салимзода, чй хел Шумо?
- Рахмат, ман нагз. Шумо чй?
- Ман хам бад не.
- Шумо дар кучо будед?
- Дар бог будам, камтар кор кардам.
- Шумо бог хам доред?
- Бале, мо як боги калон дорем.
- Чй хел нагз! Дар бог чй кор кардед?
- Замин шудгор кардам, се-чор нихол шинондам, ба дарахтхо об додам.
- Шумо дар бог зиндагй мекунед?
- Не, мо дар шахр хона дорем, дар он чо зиндаги мекунем. Дар боги мо богбон зиндагй мекунал.
- Боги Шумо дар кучост?
- Дар күнчи шахр аст.
- Хайр Саттор Рахимович, аз дидани Шумо шод шудам!
- Ман хам. То боздид, Салимзода!

- Yes
- What have you got in your kitchen?
- We've got a fridge, a cupboard, an oven, and a sink. In the cupboard we've got a lot of bowls, teapots, cups, and big and small plates.
- Have you got a washing machine?
- No. we haven't.
- What about a vacuum cleaner?
- Yes, we've got one of those.
- What do you do with a knife?
- We cut with it.
- What do you do with a spoon?
- We eat with a spoon.
- What about with a fork?
- We eat with a fork too.
- What do you cook food in?
- We cook food in the "cauldron."
- What do you bake the bread in?
- We hake bread in the "bread-oven."
- Hello, Sattor Rahimovich.
- Hi, Salimzoda. How are you?
- I'm fine, thanks. What about you?
- I'm not bad either.
- Where have you been?
- I was at the country-house, I did a little work out there.
- You've got a country-house as well?
- Yes, we have a large country-house.
- How nice! What did you do out there? - I turned over the soil, planted three or four
- seedlings, and watered the trees. - Do vou live in your country-house?
- No, we have a house in the city, we live there. A gardener lives in our country-
- Where is your country-house?
- It's on the edge of the city.6
- Goodbye, Sattor Rahimovich. I'm glad I saw vou.
- Me too. See you, Salimzoda.

⁶ Literally: "It's in the corner of the city."

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Indefinite Nouns

In Tajiki, there is no special form for definite nouns. The start of all nouns is the same, whether definite or indefinite. Indefinite nouns are formed in the following ways:

1.	мард + -е		марде		
2.	як + мард	\Rightarrow	як мард	}	= a man
3.	як + мард + -е		як марде		

The first form shown is the literary form and the second is the colloquial form; the third is rarely used. Usually, when an adjective is associated with a noun, the indefinite suffix "-e" is attached to the adjective:

марди доное /donoye/ духтари зебое /zeboye/ a wise man

хавлии калоне

a beautiful girl a large yard

Remember: the indefinite suffix "-e" is never stressed.

Infinitives

All Tajiki infinitives end in the suffix "-an". Tajiki verbs have two stems: a past tense verb stem and a present tense verb stem. The past tense verb stem is easily formed by removing the suffix "-an" from the infinitive. However, it is more difficult to make the present tense verb stem for, as in English, there are many irregular verbs in Tajiki. Therefore, present tense verb stems are given in parentheses in the vocabulary lists.

Present-Future Tense

The present-future tense is formed from the present tense verb stem with the addition of the prefix "me-" and the subject marker verb endings:

Conjugation of the verb "рафтан" ("to go") in the present-future tense

M	е- рав	-ам	(ман) меравам	I go
M	е- рав	-Й	(ту) меравй	you go
M	е- рав	-ад	(ў, вай) меравад	he/she goes
M	е- рав	-ем	(мо) меравем	we go
M	е- рав	-ед	(шумо) меравед	you go
M	е- рав	-анд	(онхо) мераванд	they go

If the present tense verb stem ends in a vowel, the subject marker verb endings change slightly, as shown in the following table:

Conjugation of the verb "омадан" ("to come") in the present-future tense

ме-	0	-яM	(ман) меоям /meoyam/	I come
ме-	0	- <u>17</u> 1	(ту) меой /теоуі/	уои соте
ме-	0	-яд	(ў, вай) меояд /meoyad/	he/she comes
ме-	0	-ем	(мо) меоем /теоует/	we come
ме-	0	-ед	(шумо) меоед /meoyed/	уои соте
ме-	0	-янд	(онхо) меоянд /meoyand/	they come

1. The present-future tense is used for statements and for actions that are habitual:

Мо одатан чойи кабуд⁷ менушем.

We usually <u>drink</u> green tea.

Падарам зуд-зуд ба шахр *меравад.* My father often goes to the city.

2. The present-future tense is used for continuing actions. In these cases, the present-

future tense is similar to the present continuous tense in English:

Холо ман дар донишгох кор

Now I'm working at the university.

мекунам.

Додо дар Душанбе зиндагй мекунад. Dodo is living in Dushanbe.

3. The present-future tense is used to express actions that will take place in the future. In these cases an adverb of time is usually used with the verb; e.g. nazox (tomorrow), xaфmau оянда (next week), баъди ду pȳ3 (after two days) etc. In these cases, the present-future tense is similar to the future in English:

Ман пагох ба Хучанд *меравам*. Хафтаи оянда Қаюм аз Амрико I <u>am going</u> to Khujand tomorrow. Next week Qayum <u>is going to come</u>

меояд.

from America.

Баъди ду руз мо ба Маскав

In two days we are going to Moscow.

меравем.

Simple Past Tense

The simple past tense is formed by adding the subject marker verb endings to the past tense verb stem:

Conjugation of the verb "patan" ("to go") in the simple past tense

рафт	-ам	(ман) рафтам	I went
рафт	-й	(ту) рафтй	you went
рафт	-	(ў, вай) рафт	he/she went
рафт	-ем	(мо) рафтем	we went
рафт	-ед	(шумо) рафтед	you went
рафт	-анд	(онхо) рафтанд	they went

The simple past tense is used to describe completed past actions. The Tajiki simple past tense is comparable with the English simple past tense:

Мо ба мактаб рафтем.

We <u>went</u> to school.

Падарам аз шахр *омад*. Модарам нон *пухт*. My father <u>came</u> from the city.
My mother <u>cooked</u> bread.

Ту хонаро *pyфmū*?

– <u>Did</u> you <u>sweep</u> the house?

⁷ In literary Tajiki, "green tea" is чойи сабэ.

NAMIKKO

р. Падарам дар Тошканд кор мекунад.

а. Умед ба бозор рафт.

example:

Example: Mo dap boe dax dapaxm dopem. 4. Consivuct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings:

····don	ларахт Телевизор Колин Курсй Курсй Курсй Курсй Тубанд Тийла	як ос чор панч шаш хафт хашт	йлавх двд внох двд тод двд внохшо двд внохномхэм двд	мо онқо падару модарам Назира Ту Шумо Чамоп ва Чамипа Саъдй
---------	---	--	--	--

Chomment don onny den durioT		Carrie normal of macourally
Онхо дар кучо кор мекунанд?	ʻq	я. Насаби (фамипини) Шумо чист?
		Answer the following questions:

CHKO TARA GAPOLAP LOPAHL? g. Нурия ба кучо меравад? р. Падарат аз кучо омад? Курокро ки пухт? e. bapodapar xabnn dopad: τ ε wλb τσb κλπο κοb w εκληστς C. MXTRCOCH MARHOH 4NCT!

і. Хонан Шумо дар кучост?

п. Саноат шавхар дорад? т. Телевизор дар кучост? L. MH TINCAP ACT 6 ДУХТАР? к. Шумо чанд колин доред?

6. Use appropriate adjectives to describe the following nouns and make sentences using them: р. Девор чй хел аст? Ulywo carpo дуст медоред?

курси пиёла йой COF LOB 90 HOH Llboa CSL копин циван ENM TXEQEL Llu :suno_N иисяб drixyn гусфанд KNLOD тиреза msxp Example: dapaxm & dapaxmu cabs & dapaxm cabs acm.

ташкилоти байналмилалй кор мекунад. $\overline{\mathbf{y}}$ тарчумон аст. Модарам сохибхоназан аст. Номи ман Чамшед аст. Ман дар Кургонтеппа зиндаги мекунам. Падарам дар 7. Read the following text and express the same information in English:

CNEX

кулон

дар мактаб мехонад. Ман ду бародар ва як хохар дорам. Бародаронам дар донишгох мехонанд. Хохарам

он чо мегузорем. Дарвозан хавлин мо калон аст. Девори хавлй сафед аст. Мо хавлин Модарам дар он нон мепазад. Мо анбор хам дорем. Каланду теша, белу арраро дар дорем. Дар он як гову се гусфанд хастанд. Дар як кунчи хавлй танурхона дорем. Мо хавлии калон дорем. Дар руйи хавлй гулу дарахтони бисёр хастанд. Мо як огил

One flower has a hundred buyers. 8 Як гулу сад харидор 8. Read the proverbs below. Memorise any that you might be able to use in conversation:

Гули сари сабад. The best flower in the basket.9

"That is, "the best person in the group." "That is, "a woman has a hundred admirers."

шишагин

HSE3

geg

xyдро д \overline{y} ст медорем.

Adjectives:

٠ς

2. Give positive and negative responses to the following questions: ј. Модарам хўрок мепазад. і. Карим дарро кушод. д. Мо шаш миз дорем. h. Мо чой нушидем. Салим дар донишгох хонд. е. Нигора хонаро руфт. Онхо дар шахр зиндагй мекунанд. с. У аз Амрико омад.

1. Change the tenses of the following verbs between simple past and present-future:

wodoo vnox ow vX¢ Example: Mymo xona doped?

Ехатріс: Ман ба кор меравам 🗢 <u>Ман ба кор рафтам</u>.

 Номи бародарат Шодй аст? Мухтор хукукшинос аст? е. Ту дар доништох мехони? d. Onxo бародар доранд? с. Онхо аз Лондон омаданд? Б. Номи Шумо Мазбут? а. Падари Шумо духтур аст? #He, mo xona nadopem.

к. Шумо дар хавлй гову гусфанд доред? Собир Рахимович устод аст? Хонаи Чалол калон аст? g. Modaph y dyxtyp act?

а) Ехатре: Тахмина аз Лондон омад. Тахмина ба Лондон рафт. 3. Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings:

Падарам аз Покистон меолд.

	Ню-Морк Хиндустон		Δ
	Маскав		ΥT
тфъд	Узбекистон	ьд	тахмина
демо	нодноП _	83	ЭихγМ
	$\mathbf X$ лани		мчн
	үмрико		шумо
	Точикистон		охно

	· <u>брэрдэж но</u> г	<u>иэнхој</u>	I nd maqa6a1
	Хиндустон		<u> </u>
	H10-Nopk		ow
	Маскав		ΥT
тфья	узбекистон	ру	Тахмина
демо	нодноП	83	дихуМ
	\mathbf{X} изид		мвн
	ожидмА		тумо
	HOTORAREOT		OVEO

	рерлин		мэн
	Канада		тумо
	кипядтэаА		ow
оэм	Казокистон	ยз	<u> </u>
въдэм	Тошканд	ба	ΥT
	Вашингтон		ману Фир <u>у</u> з
	$K\bar{y}$ no 6		падарам
	Душанбе		пидО
			·

хлнлк

иниь

нарм

lspm

сяфеп

ддүх

65 (pənunuoə)	Carden	מווק	Courtyard	touse,	:9	uossə7
------	-----------	--------	------	-----------	--------	----	--------

97/11

Iudia

וס מצונ

	018 01	купон шупан	Ruid	хошдоп
	иәум	вякте ки	สมอุเจนา เกมอง	зэмонхои кэчим
				Vocabulary:
ба кишвархои на соз. п подшохи он эе сохтам. Дар	ихат дод, ки туфт: и худат як хон пас аз як сол и бошад в касри дигады в бошад	заду ба ў масі ки рафтй, баро ба сафар рафту як касре сохтаі куромхои калим псли Точ-Махал ёр нестй. Маъч е пайдо кунй. З	ардам, ки қасри ман ми Дар Миср ба шакпи ғ А	кофй набуд. Подде дуру наэдик сафар ку Поддо Туфтахои маро и Гуфтахои маро и
			им як подшох буд. У	
		osx m	niov	
าะนำ นอบระจทหั จนุ	ı ssnəsip puv	⁽ spлом имо лпол	ni, retell ii in Tajiki in	Read the following te
ıvyı uoiisənp əh	und discuss in	егрлом имо лпол	••	Read the following to
nonder abourd wander around se question that	KEYDING tyo morld. te house and me thirsty,	dı ni s'bnsirl h	ni idiki ni li listsi in	Ep dap xohaby mo ru XO Read the following te
punose apound	KEYDING tyo morld. te house and me thirsty,	 1916w 2'919ñT h1 ni 2'bn9i1ł h	ирди чахон мегардем. НИШ хі, гегеll it in Tajiki in	OG dap kysaby mo teg 20 dap xohaby mo teg 20 dap xohaby mo teg 20 dap 20
elicious. Pe wander about pnuora arond	KEVDING tyones ang me to yones ang me tyony tyon tyon	igiən k 1916w 2'919AT 11 ni 2'bn9i1f k	яшналабон мегардем, ирди чахон мегардем. НИШ	Оши хамсо Оши хамсо Об дар кузаву мо та Бр дар хонаву мо ти ХО
r Jace is black. elicious. e wander about wander around	REVDING in the jug and we this siy, and the jug and we this six and we then the six and we that six and we the six and we the six and we the six	bioz 10q ənO ıgiən A ı 1910w 2'919AT Al ni 2'bn9i1l A	я бомаза аст. ашналабон мегардем. ирли чахон мегардем. ниш. хт, гегеll it in Tajiki in	Dun xamco Oun xamco Oo dap kysaby mo te Ep dap xohaby mo te Kedd the Jollowing te
neone else. r Jace is black. elicious. ewander about	REVDING the world. the fire and we hour's osh is d the distance of the fire of the fire one of the fire one of the fire of	mort vasob mort valou bioz 10q anO sgian A sgian A sgian A sgian A sgian A	р кас зан, дард накунад, р кас зан. р кас зан. р кадр надорад. В бомаза аст. в бомаза	ба дига, Оби лаби дар Дег ба дег гу Оши хамсо Об дар кузаву мо та Ер дар хонаву мо ти

нодуруст ря фикри Шумо Typycr uoiuido mos ul

ZINÖ

7. - Шумо чй хурдед?

9. – Ту ба дарахтон об уТ –

зиндаги ва кор мекунанд.

12. - Онхо ба кучо мераванд?

II. – Шумо гупро дуст медоред?

- Падару модарам дар Бадахшон

8. – Хонаро кй тоза кард?

10. - Xурокро ки пухт?

*тиъну*э

- Ха, хохарам шавхар ва ду фарзанд

2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the following answers:

Шумо чанд дег доред?

I. Give answers to the following questions:

dex

MYPHO

Миср

3eGorap

ахром(хо)

иаро кардан

nopan.

6. – Рустам аз кучо омад?

4. – Онхо чанд гов доранд?

9. - Ориф хавлй дорад?

мекличий е дар кишлок?

2. – Ошхонаи Шумо васеъ аст?

итадние дхаш дад тададом удадаП – .

(Gaprapu) баргаштан pajace кчсь to come back гусел кардан ffo əəs oı pjing oj сохтан (соз) сэфэр кэрдэн нузчик лрәи 194011 01 (səi-) Lijunoo kumsyb(xo)10s dγμ 1dəəəə 01 кчеди кардан asivbb oi маслихат додан σαλία маслихат וס כמון нецее задан euon8pp 'y8noue иниднохьр кофи мәілрілом тайёр кардан ә8рә_імоиу шинод əspdəsd oş хостан (хох) uoijisod siy 10f Бух ийор вд judm oj

More useful vocabulary:

The house of a friend is like your own house.

That is more beautiful than the palace of the

He advised him to visit countries far and near.

snosədsosd

{Suidsiruol}

fjəsinol iof

mord, speech

ready, prepared

fo ədvys əy; u:

раик, shore

I built another palace in the shape of the

11/811 (9n1)

ancient pyramids.

одэг удодо

жиндустон Х

иурсидан (пурс)

ря шакли

сухан

тайёр

мисии

сохип

тьдух подьд

After one year, he returned.

He wanted him to take his place.

Jalse; incorrect

Матнои суханхои подшох чй буд? Ба фикри Шумо ин дуруст аст е не? Discuss the following question:

зебо мешавад. prosper and Hourish. If your neighbour is a friend, your country will

Агар хамсоя дуст бошад, кишварат ободу

Хонаи дуст мисли хонаи худ аст. COXTAM.

ря тякии эхромкои кадима касри дигаре

Ки аз касри подшохи он кишвар зеботар

Пас аз як сол баргашт.

нээдик сэфэр кунад. Маслихат дод, ки ба кишвархои дуру

Хост, ки ба чойи худ тайёр кунад.

Translation of some expressions and idioms:

изито кардан to find, discover המכץ' האהגא ่ อินเนออนเ афсус хурдан

191891 01 кұтит кэрдэн LO 11V

(s)pimpryq 14K8J

jifjnf 'əinəəxə oi more beautiful 60 A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

2. – ... ? 8. – ... ? - Ман аз Душанбе омадам. - Ахмад ба Алмаато рафт. - Яъкуб дар Лондон зиндагй мекунад. Онхо дар боғашон ҳашт дарахти мевалор доранд. 4 - . ? $10. - \dots ?$ - Мо дах коса дорем. - Не, мо хавлй надорем. 11, -...? Дар хавлии мо се гусфанд хаст. Мо нони гарм хурдем. 6. – ... ? 12. - ... ? - Xa, \bar{v} аз Лондон омад. Лаббай?

- 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson six and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.
- 4. Write a description about yourself similar to that in exercise 7.
- 5. Describe one of the rooms in your home in detail.

Дарси 7

Lesson 7

Вақт – Фасл – Обу хаво

Time - Seasons - Weather

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

In Muslim countries, Saturday is the first day of the week, Friday being the day of rest. Of the words used in Tajiki for the days of the week, that used for "Friday" (4ymba) is an Arabic word, derived from the word 4amb, meaning "gathering." On Fridays, Muslims gather in their city's central mosques (macqudxou 40mea) to say their 11amo3 (five-times-a-day 41mba), although these are becoming more popular, and Monday is the first day of the week, as Saturdays and Sundays are the days of rest.

In the life of Tajiks, the market (6030p) has a special place. The 6030p mainly happens at the weekends. For this reason, people now refer to Sundays as "market day" $(p\bar{y}3u\ 6030p)$. In some cities and regions, goods are also bought and sold on certain other days. In such areas, people also refer to yymba6030p, $(Friday\ market)$ nanywah66030p, $(Thursday\ market)$

In connection with time, there are six main divisions of the day. Such divisions are imprecise, varying as the day lengthens and shortens, but are approximately as follows: $caxap - 3^{00}-6^{00}$, $nazox\bar{u} - 6^{00}-10^{00}$, $p\bar{y}s$, $neuuun - 10^{00}-16^{00}$, $\delta ezox\bar{u} - 16^{00}-19^{00}$, $uom - 19^{00}-22^{00}$, $uab - 22^{00}-3^{00}$.

Today in Tajikistan the European calendar is used. However, before the Soviet era, Tajikistan, like most of the Islamic world, used the Islamic xuupū calendar. The Islamic calendar is calculated from 622 AD, the time that the Islamic prophet Mohammed fled from Mekka to Medina – that is, his hegira (xuupam). There are two types of Islamic calendar: solar and lunar. Days in the solar year are reckoned the same as days in the Gregorian calendar; i.e. there are 365 days per year, 366 in leap years. The solar calendar, like the ancient Persian calendar, starts on the 21st of March. March 21st is celebrated in Persian and Turkish-speaking countries as the New Year – a festival called Huapūs. To calculate the Islamic solar year, 622 (or 621) years simply need to be subtracted from the Gregorian calendar year. The solar months, as listed in the following table, are still used by the older generation today:

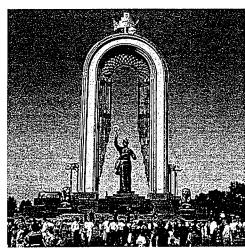
 1	Хамал	31	21.3-20.4	7	Мизон	30	23.9-22.10
2	Савр	31	21.4-21.5	8	Ақраб	30	23.10-21.11
3	Ҷавзо	31	22.5-21.6	9	Қавс	30	22.11-21.12
4	Саратон	31	22.6-22.7	10	Чадй	30	22.12-20.1
5	Асад	31	23.7-22.8	11	Далв	30	<i>21.1-19.2</i>
6	Сунбула	31	23.8-22.9	12	Хут	30/29	20.2-20.3

The lunar calendar is determined by the phases of the moon and is always ten days shorter than the usual solar calendar. The most significant of the lunar months is **Pama301**, during which many Tajiks observe the Muslim month of dawn-to-dusk fasting. Some of the other months are used as names for children born in those months (e.g. the names **Paya6** (m.) and **Paya6mox** (f.)) The full list of names for the lunar months is as follows:

1	Мухаррам	30 руз	7	Рачаб	30 р <u>ў</u> з
2	Сафар	29 ̂руз	8	Шаъбон	29 р <u>ў</u> з
3	Рабеъ-ул-аввал	30 р <u>ў</u> з	9	Рамазон	30 р <u>ў</u> з
4	Рабеъ-ус-сонй	29 р <u>ў</u> з	10	Шаввол	29 р <u>ў</u> з
5	Чумоди-ул-аввал	30 р <u>ў</u> з	11	Зил-қаъда	30 р <u>ў</u> з
6	Чумоди-ул-охир	29 р <u>ў</u> з	12	Зил-хичча	29 р <u>ў</u> з

Until the spread of Islam in ancient Persia, special Persian months were used. Even now this form of calendar is still officially used in Iran; in Tajikistan these months are only usually found in historical books. The original Iranian calendar also starts on March 21st. Iranian months are similar to the corresponding solar months with respect to the number of days in each, as shown along with the names of the original Iranian months in the following table:

1	Фарвардин	31 руз	7	Mexp	30 р <u>ў</u> з
2	Урдубихишт	31 р <u>ў</u> з	8	Обон	30 р <u>ў</u> з
3	Хурдод	31 р <u>ў</u> з	9	Озар	30 р <u>ў</u> з
4	Тир	31 р <u>у</u> з	10	Дай	30 р <u>ў</u> з
5	Мурдод	31 руз	11	Бахман	30 р <u>ў</u> з
6	Шахривар	31 р <u>ў</u> з	12	Исфанд	30/29 руз



The statue of Ismo'il I (892-907AD) in Dushanbe's central square, erected in 1999 as part of celebrations commemorating the 1100th anniversary of the Samanid dynasty (819-999 AD), the first native dynasty to arise in Persia after the Arab conquest.

The dynasty is renowned for the impulse that it gave to Persian national sentiment and learning. Under the leadership of Isma'il I, who established semiautonomous rule over Eastern Persia, the Tajik cities of Bukhara (the Samanid capital) and Samarkand became major cultural centres and Persian literature flourished.

ЛУҒАТ

VOCABULARY

январ/	January	июл	July
феврал	February	август	August
март	March	сентябр	September
апрел	April	октябр	October
май	May	ноябр	November
июн	June	декабр	December

¹ The names of Tajiki months are derived from the Russian names.

			cert 1
душанбе /dushambe/	Monday	панчшанбе /panshambe/	Thursday
сешанбе /seshambe/	Tuesday	чумъа	F riday
чоршанбе	Wednesday	шанбе /shambe/	Saturday
/chorshambe/	•	якшанбе	Sunday
		/yakshambe/	
бахор	spring	тирамох	autunin
тобистон	summer	зимистон	winter
хазора/хазорсола	millennium	acp	century
сол	year	фасл	season {of the year}
MOX	month	хафта	week
рўз	day	шаб	night
COAT	hour	дақиқа	minute
рўз(хо)и корй	working day(s)	сония	second
рўзи таваллуд /	birthday	рўз(хо)и дамгирй /	weekend
зодруз		истирохат	
муддат / вакт	a period of time	мавсим / вакт	time, season
бор / маротиба /	time, occasion	тамаддун	civilisation
дафъа	•	сулола	dynasty
имруз	today	нмшаб	tonight
имруз дируз / дина	yesterday	дишаб	last night
пагох / фардо	tomorrow	пареруз / парер	the day before
пасфардо / пагохи	the day after	mapop) or mapop	yesterday
дигар	tomorrow	имсол	this year
таърихи руз / сана	date	парерсол	the year before last
	pre-dawn	сахарй	in the early morning
caxap	4	пагохй	in the morning
пагох	morning midday	нисфирузй	in the afternoon
нисфируз			late evening
пешин	afternoon	шом	in the evening
бегох	early evening	бегохи	in the evening in the night, at night
нимашаб /	midnight, middle of	нисфишабй	in the night, at high
нисфишаб	the night	-16	aveast
офтоббаро	sunrise	офтобшин	sunset last week
порсол / соли	last year	хафтаи гузашта	tast week
гузашта			next week
соли оянда	next year	хафтаи оянда	,
як рўз пеш	one day ago	ду сол пеш	two years ago
баъди ду руз /	in two days/	баъди се мох /	in three months /
ду рўз баъд /	after two days	се мох баъд /	after three months
пас аз ду руз		пас аз се мох	
хамеша /	always, every time	дер-дер /	rarely
хама вақт		ягон-ягон	
зуд-зуд / тез-тез	often	гох-гох / баъзан	sometimes
маъмулан / одатан	usually	доим / доимо	usually, regularly
хар замон	regularly, often	доимй	usual, regular
то хол / то хозир /	until now, (not) yet	нав	new; only just,
ҳанӯз		;	recently
· • •		хеч гох / хеч вакт	never
таваллуд шудан	to be born	таваллуд кардан	to give birth
бедор шудан	to wake up	бедор кардан	to wake (smb)
осдор шүдан	го жаке ир	, осдор кардал	to make (billo)

•	*		
хобидан (хоб) /	to go to sleep	истирохат кардан /	to rest
хоб кардан	to lie dann	дам гирифтан	A - 1
дароз кашидан	to lie down	ганаб кардан	to have a nap
нишастан	to sit	сайругашт/ гардиш	to go for a walk
(шин, нишин)		кардан	
аз хоб хестан (хез)	to get up	аз чо хестан	to stand up
донистан (дон)	to know	баргаштан	to return, to come
шумурдан (шумур,	to count	(баргард) /	back
шумор)	**	бозгаштан	
азон хондан	to call to prayer	(бозгард)	
хаво	air	обу хаво	weather
офтоб	sun	мох / мохтоб	moon
ситора	star	замин	Earth
осмон	sky	абр	cloud
борон	rain	ях	ice
барф	snow	жола /jola/	hail
сел	downpour, torrent	тӯфон	storm, flood
раъду барқ	thunder-storm	туман	mist, fog
боришот	precipitation	шабнам	dew
бебориш	dry (weather)	тирукамон	rainbow
шамол / бод	wind	насим	breeze
гирдбод	tornado, whirlwind	дарача	degree (°C)
харорат	temperature	хароратсанч	thermometer
дурахшидан	to shine	баромадан (и	to rise (sun/moon)
(дурахш) / нур		офтоб / мох)	
пошидан (пош)		борон (/барф	to rain (/snow /hail)
дидан (бин)	to see	/жола) боридан	,
ях кардан /	to freeze	об шудан	to melt
ях бастан (банд)	•	чунбидан (чунб)	to move, stir
вазидан (ваз)	to blow		•
гарм	hot, warm	хунук / сард	cold, chilly
салкин	cool	абрнок	cloudy
хушк	dry	тар	wet
сахт	hard	нам / намнок	damp, humid
равшан	light	торик	dark
хатарнок	dangerous	лагжонак	slippery
Шумора	3	Numerals	···PP ··· y
адад / рақам	number	0 - сифр, нол	zero, nought
1 - як		11 - ёздах	/yozda/
2 - ду		12 - дувоздах	/duvozda/
3 - ce		13 - сенздах	/senzda/
4 - чор		14 - чордах	/chorda/
5 - панч		15 - понздах	/ponzda/
6 - шаш		16 - шонздах	/shonzda/
7 - хафт	/haf/	17 - хабдах	/habda/
•	/hash/	17 - хаодах 18 - хаждах	/hazhda/
8 - хашт 9 - хуу			
8 - ҳашт 9 - нӯҳ 10 - даҳ	/nasn/ /nü/ /da/	19 - нуздах 20 - бист	/nuzda/ /bist/

		Le	esson 7: Time, Seasons and Weather 65
21 - бисту як	50 - панчох		100 - сад
22 - бисту ду	60 - шаст		101 - яксаду як
23 - бисту се	70 - хафтод		200 - дусад
30 - сй	80 - хаштод	ζ	300 - сесад
31 - сиву як	90 - навад	ì	400 - чорсад
40 - чил	95 - наваду	панч	1000 - хазор
407 - чорсаду хафт		1990 – хазор	у нўхсаду навад
565 - панчсаду шасту панч		2124 - ду ҳаз	ору яксаду бисту чор
Ифодаи вақт ²		Telling the time	
7:00 - coaт расо ³ хафт / coaт :	қафти пагохй	It's seven o'cloc	k
8:15 – соат хашту понздах да		It's a quarter po	ist eight
соат аз хашт понздахта4 гу	зашт		
9:30 – соат нўху сй дакика /		It's nine thirty	
соат нуху ним; соат нимта			
12:35 – соат дувоздаху сиву г	анч дақиқа /	It's twelve thirty	-
соат бисту панчта кам як		It's twenty five	e to one
16:50 – соат шонздаху панчо: соат дахта кам панч	х дақиқа /	It's ten to five	
19:00 – соат нуздах / соат хаф	ти бегох /	It's 7pm	
соат хафти бегохи	_		
23:00 – соат бисту се / соат ёз		It's 11pm	
12:00 – нисфируз / соат дувоз		It's midday	
24:00 – нисфишаб / нимашаб дувоздахи шаб	шуд / соат	It's midnight	
– Соат чанд?		– What time is i	t?
– Соат дах.		– It's ten o'clo	ck.
– Кай? / (Дар) соати чанд?		– When? / (At)	
– (Дар) соати се.		– (At) three o	
– Соат надоред?		– What time is i	t? {if asking a stranger}

$C \bar{Y} X \mathcal{E} A T X \mathcal{O}$

DIALOGUES

I.	
– Салом, Олимчон!	– Hello, Olimjon.
- Салом, муаллим! Шумо чй хел?	- Hi, teacher. How are you?
– Нагз, рахмат, ту чи?	– Fine, thanks. And you?
– Бад не, мешавад.	– Not bad.
– Ту дар кучо будй?	– Where have you been?
– Ман дар Алмаато будам.	I was in Almaty.
– Кай омадй?	– When did you come back?
– Ду рўз пеш.	– Two days ago.
– Кай ба дарс меой?	 When will you come for classes?
– Аз пагох, муаллим.	 Tomorrow, teacher.
– Албатта биё.	 Be sure you come.
– Майлаш, меоям.	– OK, I will.

² Colloquial Tajiki forms are given after the slash "f".

³ Paco means "exactly."

⁴ The suffix "-ma" is used for counting things.

- Хайр!
- Худо хофиз!

2

- Салом, Мунирачон!
- Салом, дугона. Нагз-мй ту?
- Рахмат, нагз. Ту чй?
- Ман хам нагз.
- Медонй, Мунира, пагох рўзи таваллуди Ситора.
- He-e?
- Ҳа, дугоначон. Биё пагох ба хонаи ў меравем.
- Майлаш, соати чанд меравем?
- Соати дах.
- Хайр то пагох!
- Хайр!

3

- Сайёра, рузи таваллуди ту чандум?
- Чоруми март. Аз они ту чй?
- Дахуми декабр.
- Ту дар зимистон таваллуд шудай?
- Xa. Ту чй?
- Ман аввали бахор таваллуд шудаам.

4.

- Розия, ту чанд хоҳару бародар дор \bar{u} ?
- Ду хохару як бародар дорам. Ту чй?
- Ман се бародар дорам. Розия, ту рузи таваллуди онхоро медонй?
- Албатта. Хоҳари калониам Ҷамила бистуми апрел таваллуд шудааст. Хоҳари дуюмам Малика якуми август ва бародарам – Фахриддин дуюми май таваллуд шудаанд. Ту ҳам рӯзи таваллуди бародаронатро медонй?
- Ха, медонам. Хасану Хусейн дар як руз
 бисту хаштуми июл ва бародари
 хурдиам Шахриёр панчуми сентябр
 таваллуд шудаанд.

5

- Анна, ту дар кучо зиндагй мекунй?
- Ман дар Инглистон, дар шахри Ливерпул зиндагй мекунам.
- Обу хавои он чо чи хел аст?
- Зимистонаш хунук, тобистонаш гарм аст.
- Дар зимистон барф бисёр меборад?
- Xa.
- Борону жола хам меборад?

- Goodbye.
- *Вуе*.
- Hello, Munirajon.
- Hello, friend. How are you?
- Fine, thanks. And you?
- I'm fine too.
- Munira, do you know that tomorrow is Sitora's birthday?
- Are vou sure?
- Yes. Let's go and visit her tomorrow.
- OK. What time?
- At ten o'clock.
- See you tomorrow.
- Goodbye.
- Saiyora, when's your birthday?
- The fourth of March. And yours?
- The tenth of December.
- Were you born in the winter?
- Yes, and you?
- I was born at the start of spring.
- Rozia, how many brothers and sisters have you got?
- I've got two sisters and a brother. And you?
- I've got three brothers. Rozia, do you know when their birthdays are?
- Of course. My older sister, Jamila, was born on the twelfth of April, my second sister, Malika, was born on the first of August and my brother, Fakhriddin, on the second of May. Do you know your brothers' birthdays too?
- Yes, I do. Hasan and Husein were born on the same day – the twenty eighth of July – and my little brother, Shahriyor, was born on the fifth of September.
- Anna, where do you live?
- I live in England, in Liverpool.
- What's the weather like there?
- Winters are cold, but summers are warm.
- Does in snow much in the winter?
- Yes, it does.
- Does it rain and hail too?

- Бахору тирамох борон бисёр меборад, жола гох-гох меборад.
- Xавои тобистон чанд дарача гарм аст?
- Моххои июн, июл 20-25 дарача ва мохи август то 30 дарача гарм мешавад.

6.

- Начмиддин, ту имруз радио гуш кардй?
- Ха, чй буд?
- Намедонй, дар бораи обу хаво чй гуфтанд?
- Медонам. Имруз хавои гарми бебориш мешавад. Харорат аз 30 то 35 дарача гарм мешавад.
- Рахмат, чура.
- Саломат бош.

7.

- Чахонгир, ту одатан кай аз хоб мехезй?
- Ман одатан соати шаши пагохй аз хоб мехезам.
- Ту кай нахор мех⊽рй?
- Соатхои шашу ним хафт.
- Ту дар кучо кор мекунй?
- Ман дар вазорат кор мекунам.
- Кори Шумо кай сар мешавад?
- Соати хашт.
- Хўроки пешинро ту дар кучо мехўрй?
- Дар идора.
- Дар як руз чанд соат кор мекунед?
- Мо одатан дар як руз хашт соат кор мекунем.
- Ту кай ба хона бармегардй?
- Тахминан соатхой панч панчу ним.
- Бегохй ту чй кор мекунй?
- Одатан бегохихо китоб мехонам ё телевизор тамошо мекунам ё дар бог сайругашт мекунам.
- Шумо одатан кай хоб мекунед?
- Мо одатан соати ёздахи шаб хоб мекунем.

8.

- Шоиста, Шумо чандсола?
- Ман бисту дусола.
- Шавхари Шумо чандсола?
- Шавхарам бисту панчсола.
- Шумо чанд фарзанд доред?
- Ман ду писар дорам.
- Писарони Шумо чандсола?
- Писари нахустинам чорсола ва писари дуюмам хафтмоха.

- In spring and autumn it rains a lot and it occasionally hails.
- What temperature is it in the summer?
- It's 20-25°C in June and July and up to 30°C in August.
- Najmiddin, did you listen to the radio today?
- Yes. why?
- Do you know what they said about the weather?
- I do. Today the weather is going to be hot and dry. The temperature is going to get up to around 30 to 35°C.
- Thanks!
- See you.
- Jahongir, what time do you usually get up?
- I usually get up at six o'clock in the
- And when do you have breakfast?
- At six thirty or at seven a.m.
- Where do you work?
- I work in one of the ministries.
- When does your work start?
- At eight o'clock.
- And where do you have your lunch?
- At the office.
- How long do you work each day?
- We usually work eight hours a day.
- And when do you return home?
- About five, five-thirty.
- What do you do in the evening?
- I usually read books, watch television or have a walk in the garden.
- What time do you usually go to bed?
- What time do you usually go to bear

 We usually go to bed at eleven o'clock in the
 evening.
- Shoista, how old are you?
- I'm 22.
- And your husband?
- He's 25.
- How many children have you got?
- I've got two sons.
- And how old are they?
- My first son is 4 years old and my second is 7 months old.

- Хонум, Шумо чандсола?
- Аз зан сол намепурсанд.⁵
- Мебахшел. Шумо шавхар дорел?
- Ба кори ман дахолат накунед.
- Мебахшед. Аз ман наранчед, ман гали бад нагуфтам...
- Ladv. how old are vou?
- People don't ask a lady's age.
- I'm sorry. Are you married?
- Mind your own business!6
- I'm sorry. Don't be offended I didn't say anything bad...

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Numbers

Compound numbers are formed using the conjunctive suffix "-v" ("-w"): bucmy ce, nawyoxy як, хаштоду хафт, яксаду чилу хафт. The "hundreds" are written as single words: дусад, cecad. uopcad ... uvxcad. However, the "thousands" are written separately: dv xa30p, ce хазор, чор хазор, ..., бист хазор, etc.

When asking someone's age, the suffix "-a" is added to the number in the answer Шумо чандсола? – Ман сию дусола. How old are you? – I'm thirty-two.

When using numbers with nouns, the noun should be in the singular. Compare this with the English:

чор дарахт – four trees [tree] панч одам - five people [person]

So-called "numerators" are often used with numbers. The most important of these are the following:

Numerator	Types of noun	Example	Translation
-та / -то	countable nouns	дуто корд, панчта китоб	two knives, five books
дона	countable nouns	се дона себ, ду дона дафтар	three apples, two notebooks
кас / нафар	people	чор кас, дах нафар	four people, ten people
cap	animals, grapes	дах сар гов, як сар ангур	ten cows, one bunch of grapes
бех	trees	як бех себ	one apple tree
даста	flowers	як даста гул	one bouquet of flowers

Ordinal numbers

Ordinal numbers are formed in Tajiki by use of the suffix "-vm" ("-vom"); сенздах *⇔ сенздахум* (13-13th)

яксаду як \Rightarrow яксаду якум (101-101 st) бисту панч ⇒ бисту панчум (25дусаду с $\vec{\mathbf{u}} \Rightarrow \partial \mathbf{v} \mathbf{c} \mathbf{a} \partial \mathbf{v} \mathbf{c} \mathbf{u} \mathbf{o} \mathbf{m} (230-230^{th})$

 25^{th})

Ordinal numbers come after nouns, being connected by the izofat, "-u":

соли якум, рузи панчум, фарзанди дуюм, etc.

Dates are always connected with the month by means of the izofat, "-u":

чоруми март, бисту панчуми май, etc.

Ordinal numbers can also be formed by using the additional suffix "-uu" in combination with the first form shown above. This kind of ordinal comes before nouns and is most common in literary Taiiki:

панчумин сол = соли панчум, дахумин руз = рузи дахум, еtc.

For the ordinal "first." two additional words are also used: assan - assanum, and naxvem нахустин:

аввалин р \bar{y} 3 = р \bar{y} 3и аввал ("the first day), нахустин бор = бори нахуст ("the first time").

The words accaran and conunn are also used to express the meanings "firstly," and "secondly", respectively.

Fractions

When writing decimal fractions in Tajiki, a comma is used to separate the fraction from the whole part of the number, not a point. Compare:

Tajiki: 10,27; 0,7; 101,42; 4,0005. English: 10.27; 0.7; 101.42; 4.0005.

The way for reading fractions in Tajiki is given below:

1/2	як тақсими ду	аз ду як хисса	ним
1/3	як тақсими се	аз се як хисса	сеяк
1/4	як тақсими чор	аз чор як хисса	чоряк
3/4	се таксими чор	аз чор се хисса	
0,1	_	нолу аз дах як, аз дах як хисса	
1,3		яку аз дах се	
2,5		дую аз дах панч	дую ним
4,75		чору аз сад хафтоду панч	
2,0003		дую аз дах хазор се	

The word nucd is also used when counting half of something; e.g. nucdu non ("half a loaf of bread").

Mathematical symbols

+	_	×	:	=
чамъ, плюс	тарх, минус	зарб	тақсим	баробар
addition, plus	subtraction, minus	multiplication	division*	equals
	* Note:	this is a different	symbol to the	se used in Eng

3+5=8 се чамъи панч баробари хашт дах тархи чор баробари шаш 10-4=6

5×5=25 панч зарби панч баробари бисту панч

20:4=5 бист таксими чор баробари панч

The word for percentage is "dous;" e.g. 40%; yun dous

⁵ Another useful expression for use when trying to avoid undesired approaches is "*HH as pyu odo6 necm*." ("It's not polite to ask that.")

⁶ Literally: "Don't interfere in my business." Similar responses, meaning the same thing, are "Ин кори ман," and "Ин кори ту нест." A stronger response for women to use when a strange man asks whether she is married and that should shame even the more persistent is "Hu xaëmu ounaeuu man." ("This is personal." - Literally: "This is my family life.")

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

 Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings: Ехатрle: Бародарам 20 сентябр таваллуд шудааст.⁷

ман	3	январ	
Мавчуда	8	феврал	
бародарам	11	март	
хохарам	16	апрел	таваллуд шуда
Неъмат	19	май	
шумо	22	июн	
бародарони Ризо	25	пои	

 Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings: Ехатрlе: Мо дар як хафта панч руз кор мекунем.

мо онхо Малика Расулу Рахим	дар як	р <u>ў</u> з хафта мох	5 8 10 20	рўз соат	кор мекун
падарам			15		

3. Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings:

Example: Човид дируз аз Душанбе омад.

Човид пагох ба Душанбе меояд.

Човид шанбеи гузашта ба Хучанд рафт.

Човид баъди ду руз ба Хучанд меравад.

Човид мо падару модарам шумо онхо Нигина ту	имрўз дирўз пагох ду рўз пеш баъди ду рўз хафтаи оянда шанбеи гузашта	аз ба	Душанбе Хучанд Алмаато Бишкек Бадахшон Кургонтеппа Маскав	мео мерав омад рафт
---	---	----------	---	------------------------------

- 4. Change the following verbs to the appropriate tense:
 - а. Дируз барф (боридан).
 - b. Имруз хаво гарм (шудан).
 - с. Падарам пагох ба Маскав (рафтан).
 - d. Дар фасли бахор бисёр борон (боридан).
 - е. Хафтаи гузашта мо ба Лондон (рафтан).
 - f. Ту кай аз Хучанд (омадан)?
 - g. Ман хар руз соати 6 аз хоб (хестан).
 - ь. Бародарам панч сол дар Амрико зиндагй (кардан).
- 5. Read and write the numbers below in Tajiki:
 - a. 27, 48, 52, 63, 76, 89, 91, 104, 112, 123, 134, 277, 347, 481, 502, 604, 700, 799, 845, 911, 1027, 1110, 2040.
 - b. 1, 11, 111, 1111, 11111, 111111. c. 2, 12, 22, 222, 2222, 22222.
 - d. 3, 13, 33, 333, 3333, 33333. e. 4, 14, 44, 444, 4444, 44444.
 - f. 5, 15, 55, 555, 5555, 55555. g. 6, 16,
- g. 6, 16, 66, 666, 6666, 66666.

h. 7, 17, 77, 777, 7777, 77777.
i. 8, 18, 88, 888, 8888, 88888.
j. 9, 19, 99, 999, 9999, 99999.

k. 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 200, 10000, 20000.

6. Read the following numbers and write them in words:

0,3	1,7	2,08	5,25	10,0001	27,75	120,243
1/2	1/3	2/3	3/4	1/4	1/5	270,0101
2/7	3/5	4/7	5/6	8/9		

7 Read and write the following times in Tajiki:

٠	ILLUM WITH IT	ne me jone	,, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				
	6:00	6:12	7:10	8:25	9:35	10:55	11:30
	12:15	13:40	14:10	15:37	16:42	17:05	18:20
	10:45	20:00	21.21		23:30	00:15	

8. Calculate the following sums and write the equations with their answers in Tajiki words:

220+170	78–42	12×14	840:3
340+1220	720-441	20×40	945:5
176+2760	850–192	120×241	700:10
980+371	841–272	780×4	1050:50

- 9. Answer the following questions:
- А) а. Шумо кай аз хоб мехезед?
 - b. Шумо кай нахор (хуроки пешин, хуроки шом) мехуред?
 - с. Шумо кай ба кор меравед?
 - d. Шумо дар кучо кор мекунед?
 - е. Шумо дар як руз чанд соат кор мекунед?
 - f. Кори Шумо кай сар (тамом) мешавад?
 - g. Шумо кай ба хона бармегардед?
 - h. Бегохихо Шумо чи кор мекунед?
 - і. Шумо одатан кай хоб мекунед?
- В) а. Дируз Шумо кай аз хоб хестед?
- b. Дина Шумо кай ба кор рафтед?
 - с. Дируз Шумо чанд соат кор кардед?
 - d. Дируз Шумо кай ба хона омадед?
 - е. Дируз бегохи Шумо чи кор кардед?
 - f. Дируз Шумо кай хоб кардед?

10. Read the proverbs below. Memorise any that you might be able to use in conversation: Офтобро бо доман пушида намешавад. You can't clothe the sun with a skirt.

⁷ This verb tense will be studied in lesson twelve; for now, just use it as the expression for "was/were born."

⁸ Said to someone who makes a lot of promises but never fulfils them.

12. – Дирўз Шумо чй хўрдед? 6. - Coar yang? 11. - Падаратон кай аз Алмаато омад? 2. – Шумо кадом фаслхоро дуст медоред? 10. - Дируз Шодй ба кучо рафт?4. - Онхо кай ба Точикистон омаданд? чандшанбе? 3.- Nмруз кадом руз аст? / Ммруз ?тэв $\epsilon \overline{V}$ д днви qванк ихоМ – .6 2. - Имруз чандум аст? 8. – Як соат чанд дакика аст? I. – Шумо кай таваппуп шудаед? 7. – Холо бахор аст ё зимистон? I. Give answers to the following questions: $ZI\Omega \overline{O}$ *ШИРНА*Л .dn 19D шед corresponding time of day. The first activity is shown below as an example: Draw a timeline showing all the activities described in the text and, where appropriate, the Точикистон. Tajik State National University. Донишгохи давлатии миллии ро кори худ машгул мешавам. I до шу оми могк. ... ,sldiszog zi 1i {I Агар имконият бошад ... Lesson 7: Time, Seasons and Weather 73

Ман хар руз соати 6(-и пагохй) аз хоб мехезам. Дасту рулмро мешуям ва сипас Бузи кории ман

кори худ машгул мешавам. Агар имконият бошал, телевизор тамошо мекунам. Ман одатан соати хафти бегох хуроки шом мехурем. Аз соати хафту ним то соати 9 ман бо

тоза гардиш карданро дуст медорам. Бегохихо бо фараандонам бозй мекунам. Мо хўроки пешин мехўрам. Аз соати се то соати панч истирохат мекунам. Ман дар хавои

мекунам. Кори мо соати 1(-и руз) тамом мешавад. Соати 2 ба хона барметардам ва Ман дар Донишгохи давлатии миллии Гочикистон, дар факултаи шаркшиносй кор

нахор мехурам. Соати 7-у ним ба кор меравам. Кори мо хар руз соати 8 сар мешавад.

normally use separate names for different meals. Instead they simply say xypok xypoan or askom xypoan. In spoken Tajiki, the Russian word obed labet is widely used to mean "lunch" and "lunchreak." People do not

9 That is, Mecca, the direction of the sea, relative to Tajikistan.

 $\lambda nunf$

λυμά οι

риг от

*ләии*ір

ва ахли оилаам одатан соати 11 хоб мекунем.

lilidissoq

ριεακξαει

әуз fo sләqшәш

səipnis ininəiro

pəidnəəo əq oi

pands and face

Дар хавои тоза гардиш мекунам.

sunoibi and some expressions and idioms:

мя<u>у</u>шэм одмя<u>у</u>д утэвД

ахли оила

TRNHONMN

цасту ру

рози кардан

тярктиносы

тамом шудан

машгул шудан

нахор / ноништа

х<u>λ</u>боки том

Vocabulary:

Read the following text and complete the task that follows:

ШИНОХ

READING

I have a walk in the fresh air.

I wash (my hands and face).

HOIDM OI

Jie ysalf

u18əq 01

oue, s omu mork

ληηουf

ljpnsn

уэипј

иәүз

ſį

дамото кардан

непүмдем / нетедо

хуроки пешин¹⁰

хавои тоза

сяр шудан

факупта

кори худ

сицяс

arap

If a cloud rises from Kiblah³, it will rain hard; if a king is not righteous, his kingdom will fall into ruin.	Абр агар аз кибла хезад, сахт борон мешавад, Шох агар одил набошад, мулк вайрон мешавад.
Sit with the moon and you'll become like the sit with a pot and you'll become black.	Бо мох шинй, мох шавй, Бо дег шинй, сиёх шавй.
Little-by-little will become a lot; Drop-by-drop will become a downpour.	Андак-андак хеле шавад. Қатра-қатра селе шавад.
you've lost your chance. Once your time has passed,	Вақтат рафт, бахтат рафт. ——

4. Describe your working day in Tajiki using the past and present-future tenses.

with a language helper or other language partner. 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson seven and, if possible, role-play the struations - Ха, тобистони Точикистон гарм аст. - 4 зарби 4 16 мешавад. 7 ... - .0 12. - ... ? мекλнем. Борон дар бахор ва тирамох меборад. - Mo gap ak py3 xaut coat kop

Мо соати ҳафти пагоҳй наҳор кардем.

- Мо одатан соати шаш аз хоб мехезем. - Coat аз ду дахта гузашт.

Алишер дирўз аз Амрико омад.

 Имруз панчшанбе аст. γ ... – .ε

mygaact. - Падарам якуми феврал таваллуд

 Ман рузи якшанбе омадам. - Имруз 20 август аст. ? ... – .T \tilde{Y} ... – .I

2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the following answers:

Lesson 8

Кишвархо – Миллатхо Забонхо

Countries – Nationalities Languages

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

Until the Soviet era, one part of what is now Tajikistan (the central and southern part) was within the emirate of Bukhara; the other part (the northern part and mountains in the east) was part of the Russian province of Turkestan. In 1924, national boundaries were drawn up, dividing Central Asia into the separate countries of Turkmenistan, Kazakstan, Uzbekistan, and Kirghizstan. At that time, Tajikistan was an autonomous region of Uzbekistan. In 1929 Tajikistan was transformed into a separate nation, the northern part being added to it at that time. Following the collapse of the former Soviet Union, Tajikistan announced its independence on 9th September 1991. Tajikistan has four regions: the "central dependent districts" (uoxunxou mobeu mapkas), Cyzò (formerly, Jenunoboò; with its centre in Xyqand), Xamnon (centred on Kypeoumenna) and the autonomous region of Kyxucmonu Badaxuon (centred on Xopyz). [For a map of the country and its regions, see the appendices.]

Tajikistan measures 143,100 km², of which 93% is mountainous. It has a population of over six million. Tajiks represent the majority (about 60%), other people groups including Uzbeks, Russians, Kirghiz, and Turkmen. It borders Kirghizstan to the north, Uzbekistan to

the north and west, Afghanistan to the south and China to the east.

Most ancient countries have their own names in Tajiki, particularly, eastern countries, Muslim countries, and the larger countries of Europe. The names of other countries (Africa, South America, and the rest of Europe) have been assimilated into Tajiki from Russian. In recent years, the names of some of these countries and continents have changed and Tajiki forms have been derived from their original names: e.g. Απέπμε Μιεπικόν, Φράποια, Φράποια, Γερμαπία Οπλοί, Βεπέρια Μανοριαποί, Εεροπα Ασργίο, Αμέρικα Απρίκο, etc. It should also be noted that the English names of cities and regions in Tajikistan (and other Central Asian countries) used to be derived from their Russian names. For this reason, there are a lot of mistakes made in transliterations of the names of Tajiki cities and areas. For instance, Κύρεουμπέρια became in English, via the Russian, Kurgantube, and Κύχιας πορίκιος κόρεος πορίκιος Τομικιας πορίκιος Τομικιας πορίκιος Τομικιας πορίκιος π

The names of most people groups and nationalities are formed by the addition of the suffix "- \bar{u} " (or "- $z\bar{u}$ " or "- $s\bar{u}$ " following an "a" or "s") to the name of the country: e.g. Амрико \Rightarrow амрико \bar{u} , Юноп \Rightarrow юнон \bar{u} , Миср \Rightarrow миср \bar{u} , Эрон \Rightarrow эрон \bar{u} . Where the country name is formed by the addition of a suffix, the name of the people is usually formed by removing the suffix: e.g. Точикистон \Rightarrow точик, Хиндустон \Rightarrow хинду, Инглистон \Rightarrow англис (инглис), Туркия \Rightarrow турк. In Tajiki there are also plurals for nationalities and names of people groups: e.g. амрикоихо, русхо, точикон, хиндувон, туркхо, австралиялихо, инотландихо. When talking about the people of a nation, the words халк ог мардум аге sometimes used: e.g. халки Чин, мардуми Фаронса, халки Олмон, мардуми Корея. Note that, unlike in English, the names of peoples and nationalities are not written with a capital: e.g. точикон, русхо, арабхо, мугулхо.

ЛУҒАТ

VOCABULARY

Country	Nationality / people	Language	English (country)
Австралия	австралиягй	англисй	Australia
Австрия	австриягй	немисй	Austria
Албания	албанй	албанй	Albania
Алчазоир	алчазоирй (араб)	арабй	Algiers
Амрико	амрикой	англисй	America
Ангола	анголй	португалй	Angola
Арабистони Сауди	араб	араби	Saudi Arabia
Аргентина	аргентинй	испани	Argentina
Арманистон	арман	арманй	Armenia
Афгонистон	афғон	дар́ӣ/пашту	Afghanistan
Белгия	белгиягй	фламандй / немисй / фаронсавй	Belgium
Белоруссия	белорус	белорусй	Byelorussia
Бразилия	бразилиягй	португалй	Brazil
Британияи Кабир /	-	• -	
Бритониё	британиягй	англисй	Great Britain
Булгопис	булғор	булғорй	Bulgaria
Ветнам	ветнами	ветнамй	Vietnam
Голландия /	голландй /	голландй /	rr. 11 J
Хулланд	хулландй	хулландй	Holland
Гурчистон	гурчй	гурчй	Georgia
Дания	даниягй	даниягй	Denmark
Иёлоти Муттахидаи		• •	United States of
Амрико (ИМА)	амрикой	англисй	America
Инглистон	англис / инглис	англисй	England
Индонезия	индонезиягй	индонезй	Indonesia
Ирландия	ирландй	англисй / ирландй	Ireland
Ирок	араб / ироки	араби	Iraq
Исландия	исландй	исландй	Iceland
Испания	испани	испанй	Spain
Исроил	яхудй	яхудй	Israel
Италия / Итолиё	италиягй	итолиёй	Italy
Канада	канадагй	англисй	Canada
Корея	кореягй	кореягй	Korea
Куба	ку̂багӣ	испанй	Cuba
Казокистон	қазоқ	қазоқй	Kazakstan
Киргизистон	қиргиз	қирғизй	Kirghizstan
Лаос	лаосй	лаосй	Laos
Латвия	латвиягй	латвиягй	Latvia
Литва	литвагй	литвонй	Lithuania
Лубнон	лубнонй (араб)	арабй	Lebanon
Малайзия	малайзияги	ма̂лайӣ	Malaysia
Мачористон /	мачористонй /	VO WARD	Hungary
Венгрия	венгриягй	мачорй	Hungary
Мексика	мексикой	испани	Mexico
Миср	мисрӣ/араб	араби	Egypt
Молдова	молдовагй	молдовй	Moldavia

Мугулистон	муғул	мугулй	Mongolia
Норвегия	норвегиягй	норвегй	Norway
Озарбойчон	озарбойчонй	озарбойчонй	Azerbaijan
Олмон	олмонй / немис	немисй	Germany
Покистон	покистонй	урду	Pakistan
Полша	полшагй	полшагй	Poland
Португалия	португалиягй	португалй	Portugal
Руминия	румин	руминй	Rumania
Русия	pyc	русй	Russia
Словакия	словак	словакй	Slovakia
Сурия	суриягӣ (араб)	арабй	Syria
Точикистон	точик	точикй	Tajikistan
Туркия	турк	туркй	Turkey
Туркманистон	туркман	туркманй	Turkmenistan
Украина	украин	украинй	Ukraine
Уругвай	уругвайй	испани	Uruguay
_ Уэлс	уэлсй	англисй / уэлсй	Welsh
Узбекистон	ӯзбек	<u>ў</u> збек й	Uzbekistan
Фаронса	фаронсавй	фаронсавй	France
Филиппин	филиппинй	филиппинй	Philippines
Финляндия	финн	финий	Finland
Хиндустон	ҳинду	хиндй	India
Чехия	чех	чехй	Czech Republic
Чили	чилиягй	испанй	Chile
Чин / Хитой	чинй / хитой	чинй / хитой	China
***		немисй / итолиёй /	
Швейсария	швейсариягй	фаронсавй /	Switzerland
		рето-романй	
Шветсия	швед	шведй	Sweden
Шотландия	щотландй	англисй / шотландй	Scotland
Эрон	эронй	форсй	Iran
Эстония	эстонй	эстонй	$oldsymbol{E}$ stonia
**		сербухорватй /	
Югославия	югослав	хорватй / сербй /	Yugoslavia
		македонй / словенй	
Юнон	инони	юнонй	Greece
Япония / Чопон	япони	<u> йнопк</u>	Japan
қитъа	continent	Арктика	Arctic
Аврупо	Europe	Амрико	America
Австралия	Australia	Африко	Africa
Антарктида	Antarctica	Осиё	Asia
укёнус	ocean	Укёнуси Хинд	Indian Ocean
Укёнуси Атлас	Atlantic Ocean	Укёнуси Яхбастаи	Arctic Ocean
(Атлантика)	D 18 0	_ Шимолй	
Укёнуси Ором	Pacific Ocean	бахр	sea
кўл	lake	дарё	river
ĸÿx	mountain	биёбон	desert
экватор	equator	кутб .	pole
давлат / кишвар	country, state	минтака	region, area
ватан	motherland, homeland	диер	land, region, country

миллат мамлакат вилоят	nation, nationality country, state region, province (in Tajikistan)	чумхур нохия (рl.: навохй) музофот хүдүд / қаламрав	republic district, region province territory
сархад / марз намоянда(гон) халк / мардум забон забони модарй зодгох	frontier, border representative(s) people language native language place of birth	иёлат душман ахолй забони миллй забони расмй / давлатй	state, region enemy population national language official language
гуфтан (гўй) омўхтан (омўз) навиштан (навис) тавонистан (тавон)	to say, to tell to learn to write to be able	шунидан (шунав) фахмидан (фахм) хондан (хон) тарчума кардан хамсархад будан	to hear to understand to read to translate to share a border
шимол – шимолй шарқ – шарқй шимолу шарқй чанубу шаркй	north – northern east – eastern north-eastern south-eastern	чануб – чанубй гарб – гарбй шимолу гарбй чанубу гарбй	south – southern west – western north-western south-western
обй / бахрй наздик баланд	sea (adj.) near high	хамсархад дур паст	bordered far low

СЎХБАТХО

DIALOGUES

- Бобочон, шинос шав, ин кас дўсти ман Франческо.
- Хеле шодам. Ман Бобочон.
- Бобочон, Шумо точик?
- Ха, ман точик. Миллати Шумо чи?
- Ман итолиёй.
- Шумо дар кучо зиндагй мекунед?
- Пештар дар Рим зиндагй мекардам. Холо дар Душанбе зиндагй мекунам. Бобочон, Шумо дар Италия будед?
- Не, набудам. Франческо, Шумо кай ба Точикистон омадед?
- Се мох пеш.
- Шумо забони точикиро хуб медонед?
- He, ҳануз намедонам.

2.

- Биёед, шинос мешавем: номи ман Чек, ман амрикой.
- Хеле мамнунам, номи ман Ахрор. Ман точик.
- Ахрор, Щумо дар кучо таваллуд шудаед?

- Bobojon, let me introduce you: this is my friend Francesco.
- Nice to meet you. I'm Bobojon.
- Bobojon, are you Tajik?
- Yes, I'm Tajik. What's your nationality?
- I'm Italian.
- Where do you live?
- I used to live in Rome, but now I live in Dushanbe. Bobojon, have you been to Italy?
- No, I haven't. Francesco, when did you come to Tajikistan?
- Three months ago.
- Do you speak Tajiki well?
- No, not yet.
- We've not met: My name's Jack; I'm American.
- Nice to meet you. My name is Ahror; I'm Taiik.
- Ahror, where were you born?

- Зодгохи ман Кургонтеппа аст. Шумо
- Ман дар Чикаго таваллуд шудаам. Забони модарии Шумо чй?
- Точикй. Аз они Шумо чй?
- Англисй.
- 3.
- Салом, Хушбахт!
- Салом, Антон! Ту чй хел? Корхоят нагз-мй?
- Нагз, чўра, худат чй хел?
- Бал не, мешавал. Антон, кай боз¹ туро надидам, ту дар кучо будй?
- Ман дар Фаронса будам. Дина баргаштам.
- Ту дар Париж будй?
- Xa.
- Ту забони фаронсавиро медонй?
- Не, мо як тарчумон доштем.
- Чанд руз он чо будед?
- Як хафта.
- Хайр, чй хел? Маъкул шуд?2
- Хеле. Париж бисёр шахри зебо будааст, Yes. Paris is a very beautiful city, and the одамонаш хуб.
- Хайр, чура, сухбат бокй!³
- Хайр, то боздид!
- Роберт, забони модарии ту чй?
- Англисй.
- Ту боз кадом забонхоро медонй?
- Ман боз забонхои фаронсави ва русиро медонам. Забони модарии ту чй?
- Забони модариам точикй.
- Забони англисиро дар кучо омухти?
- Ман чор сол дар донишгох хондам, се мох дар Инглистон будам.
- Дар кадом шахр будй?
- Дар Лондон.
- Ту забони русиро хам медонй?
- Ха, аксари точикон забони русиро мелонанл.

- I was born in Ourghonteppa. What about
- I was born in Chicago. What's your native language?
- Tajiki. And yours?
- English.
- Hello, Khushbakht,
- Hello, Anton. How are you? Is your work going well?
- Yes, fine. What about you?
- Not bad. Anton I haven't seen you for ages. Where have you been?
- I was in France. I came back yesterday.
- Did vou go to Paris?
- Yes.
- Do you speak French?
- No, we had an interpreter.
- How long did you stay there?
- For one week
- Well, did vou like it?
- people are very polite.
- Goodbye. See you!
- Goodbye.
- Robert, what's your native language?
- English.
- Which other languages do you know?
- I also know French and Russian. What's your native language?
- My native language is Tajiki.
- Where did you learn English?
- I studied at university for four years, and was in England for three months.
- Which city were you in?
- In London.
- Do you know Russian too?
- Yes, the majority of Tajiks know Russian.
- 1 "Кай боз" Literally, "Since when," this is a colloquial expression meaning the same as "чанд вакт шуд, ки" and "чанд муддат аст, ки" ("How long is it since"). "Кай боз туро надидам" is thus equivalent to "Long time, no see."
- 2 "Маъкул шуд?" ("Did you like it?") This is a colloquial expression meaning "to like"; e.g. "Ин ба ман маъкул" "I like it."
- ³ "Cyxbam boκū" Literally, "Conversation is remaining," this expression is sometimes used when saying goodbye and the speakers want to talk to each other again.

- Биёед, шинос мешавем: номи ман Алфред.
- Хеле мамнунам, номи ман Вероника. Алфред. Шумо аз кучо?
- Ман аз Швейсария. Шумо чй?
- Ман аз Мексика. Алфред, забони модарии Шумо чй?
- Забони модариам олмонй.
- Забони олмонй забони расмии Швейсария аст?
- Дар Швейсария се забони расми хаст: олмони, итолиёй ва фаронсави. Забони модарии Шумо чи?
- Забони модарии ман испани аст.
- Шумо боз кадом забонхоро медонед?
- Ман боз забонхои англисй ва русиро мелонам. Шумо чй?
- Ман хам забони англисиро медонам. Забони точикиро мефахмам, аммо хуб гап зала наметавонам.
- Исфандиёр, инхо дустони ту?
- Ха. Шинос шав: ин Марта, ў олмонидухтар аст. Холо вай дар Душанбе кор ва зиндаги мекунад. Ин Ван Ли. Пештар дар Пекин зиндаги мекард, холо дар Душанбе, дар корхонаи муштараки Точикистону Хитой кор мекунад. Ин Роберт. У англис аст. Вай хам дар Точикистон кор мекунад.
- Аз дидани шумоён⁴ шодам. Номи ман Чек. Ман амрикой. Соли гузашта ба Точикистон омадам.
- Бисёр хуб. Чек, шумо пеш аз ба Точикистон омадан дар Амрико зиндаги мекардед?
- Не, чор сол пеш аз Амрико ба Африко, ба Миср рафтам ва дар он чо дар як ташкилоти байналмилали се сол кор кардам.
- Зодгохи Шумо кадом шахр?
- Ман дар Вашингтон таваллуд шудаам.
- Забони модарии Шумо англисй?
- Не, падару модарам аслан аз Олмонанд.
- Шумо забони олмониро хам медонед?

- We've not met: My name is Alfred.
- Nice to meet you. My name's Veronica. Where are you from, Alfred?
- I'm from Switzerland. And you?
- I'm from Mexico. Alfred, what is your native language?
- It's German.
- Is German the official language of Switzerland?
- There are three official languages in Switzerland: German, Italian and French. What's your native language?
- My native language is Spanish.
- What other languages do you know?
- I also know English and Russian. What about vou?
- I know English too. I can understand Tajiki, but I can't speak it well.
- Isfandivor, are these your friends?
- Yes. Let me introduce you: this is Martha. She's German. She currently works and lives in Dushanbe. This is Van Li. He used to lived in Peking, but now he works in a Tajik-Chinese joint enterprise. This is Robert. He's English and also works in Tajikistan.
- I am glad to meet you all. My name's Jack. I'm American. I came to Tajikistan last
- Nice to meet you. Jack, before you came to Tajikistan, did you live in America?
- No. four years ago, I left America and went to Africa - to Egypt - and worked in an international organisation there for three
- Which city were you born in?
- I was born in Washington.
- Is your native language English? - No, my parents are originally from Germany.
- Do you know German too?

⁴ Шумоён is a form of respectful address sometimes used for the second person plural.

- Албатта, олмонй забони модарии ман
- Аз сухбат бо Шумо шодем, Роберт.
- Ман хам. Хайр, хуш бошед!
- То боздил!

- Of course: German is my native language.
- I enjoyed talking with you, Robert.
- Me too. Goodbye.
- See vou.

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Descriptive Past

The descriptive past tense (or, as it is sometimes referred to in English, the past imperfect tense) is formed from the past tense verb stem and the prefix "me-" together with the subject marker verb endings:

Conjugation of the verb "рафтан" ("to go") in the descriptive past tense

ме-	рафт	-ам	(ман) мерафтам	
ме-	рафт	- <u>14</u>	(ту) мерафтй	used to go/
MC-	рафт	-	(ў, вай) мерафт	would go /
ме-	рафт	-ем	(мо) мерафтем	was (were) going/
ме-	рафт	-ед	(шумо) мерафтед	went
ме-	рафт	-анд	(онхо) мерафтанд	

1. The descriptive past is used to express past actions that were habitual or regular:

Соли гузашта ман хар хафта ба бародарам мактуб менавиштам.

Солхои донишчуй мо бисёр китоб мехондем.

were students

2. The descriptive past is used when describing past situations:

Он солхо мо дар Токио зиндагй мекардем. Падарам дар донишгох кор мекард. Модарам сохибхоназан буд.5

At that time, we lived in Tokyo. My father worked in a university. My mother was a housewife.

Last year I used to write letters to my

We used to read lots of books when we

brother every week.

The descriptive past is used when talking about an unspecified duration of time in the past. Compare the following two pairs of sentences:

Дируз ман ба Эдвард мактуб

Вакте ки ман дар Испания будам, хар хафта ба Эдвард мактуб менавиштам

Мо панч сол дар Канада зиндагй кардем.

Солхои хафтодум мо дар Канада зиндагй мекардем.

Yesterday I wrote a letter to Edward.

When I was in Spain, I used to write letters to Edward every week.

We lived in Canada for five years.

In the seventies, we lived in Canada.

Comparatives and Superlatives

Comparatives are formed by adding the suffix "-map" to adjectives:

калон	big	калонтар	bigger
бех	good	бехтар	better
бад	bad	бадтар /batar/	worse
зебо	beautiful	зеботар	more beautiful

Ин миз аз он миз калонтар аст. Имруз хаво гармтар аст. Тошканд нисбат ба Алмаато

This table is bigger than that table. Todav is hotter.

Tashkent is nearer than Almaty.

наздиктар аст.

Superlatives are formed by adding suffix "-un" to the comparative form of adjectives:

калонтар	bigger	калонтарин	the biggest
бехтар	better	бехтарин	the best
бадтар	worse	бадтарин	the worst
зеботар	more beautiful	зеботарин	the most beautiful

Superlatives can come both before and after nouns. When before a noun, it doesn't take an izofat, "-u":

зеботарин духтар = духтари зеботарин – the most beautiful girl.

Тобистон гармтарин фасли сол аст. Ватикан хурдтарин давлати чахон

Summer is the hottest season of year. The Vatican is the smallest country in

the world.

Уқёнуси калонтарини дунё Уқёнуси The world's largest ocean is the Ором аст.

Pacific.

Superlatives can also be formed using the phrase as xama. In this case, simple adjectives and comparatives can also be used instead of the superlative "-mapun" form:

Тобистон фасли аз хама гарм аст.

Summer is the hottest season.

Зулфия талабан аз хама бехтар аст. Zulfiya is the best pupil of all.

Derivational Suffixes

Word-building using the suffix "-й" (-гй, -вй)

1. The suffix " $-\bar{u}$ " (" $-z\bar{u}$ ") forms abstract nouns from nouns, adjectives, and numbers:

дўст	friend	дўстй	friendship
бародар	brother	бародарй	brotherhood
зинда	alive	зиндагй	life
зебо	beautiful	зебой	beauty a hundred
сал	hundred	садй	и пинитеи

⁵ In the descriptive past, the verbs "bydan" and "douman" do not take the prefix "me-".

2. The suffix " $-\bar{u}$ " (" $-z\bar{u}$ " and " $-\sigma\bar{u}$ ") forms adjectives from nouns:

даст	hand	дастй	hand-made, manual
шахр	city (n)	шахрй	city (adj.)
хона	house	хонагй	domestic, household
замона	epoch, period	замонавй	modern
афсона	fairy-tale (n)	афсонавії	fairy-tale (adj)

Word-building using the suffix "-истон"

The suffix "-ucmon" is used to form the names of places:

гул	flower	гулистон	flower-garden
точик	Tajik	Точикистон	Tajikistan
кӯҳ	mountain	кўхистон	mountains
қабр	grave	қабристон	cemetery

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

1. Construct sentences based on the following table: Example: Пойтахти Ветнам шахри Ханой аст.

Пойтахти	Канада Фаронса Хитой Миср Хиндустон	шахри	Пекин Қохира Оттава Дехлй Париж	аст.
----------	---	-------	---	------

- 2. Complete the following sentences, as shown in the example:
 - а) Example: Виктор аз Русия аст. Забони модарии ў русй аст.
 - а. Марчелло аз Италия аст. Забони модарий у ... аст.
 - b. Стивенсон аз Шветсия аст. Забони модарии ў ... аст.
 - с. Камол аз Узбекистон аст. Забони модарии ў ... аст.
 - d. Мо аз Мисрем. Забони модарии мо ... аст.
 - е. Онхо аз Мексикаанд. Забони модарии онхо ... аст.
 - f. Мухаммад Човидхон аз Покистон аст. Забони модарии ў ... аст.
 - g. Ким аз Корея аст. Забони модарии ў ... аст.
 - b) Example: Томсон англис аст. Ватани ў <u>Инглистон</u> аст.
 - а. Грейс амрикой аст. Ватани ў ... аст.
 - b. Мо точикем. Ватани мо ... аст.
 - с. Онхо русанд. Ватани онхо ... аст.
 - d. Рач хинду аст. Ватани ў ... аст.
 - е. Мехмет Савран турк аст. Ватани ў ... аст.
- 3. Transform the following sentences, as shown in the example:

Example: Mo забони англисиро медонем. ⇒ Mo бо англиси гап зада метавонем.

- а. Падарам забони фаронсавиро медонанд.
- b. Ванг Чуан забони хитоиро медонад.
- с. Нигора забони немисиро медонад.
- d. Онхо забони форсиро намедонанд.
- е. Марселло забони испаниро медонад.
- f. Мансур забони киргизиро намедонад.

4. Construct sentences using comparative adjectives based on the following tables:

а) Example: Тобистон аз зимистон гармтар аст.

д <u>ў</u> ст Париж Зоир Зайнаб	аз	Лондон шаб Назира душман	дарозтар донотар зеботар калонтар	аст.
рўз		Бадриддин	бехтар	

b) Example: Бародарам нисбат ба ман калонтар аст.

Осиё Антарктида Швейсария нисбат бахор падарам	тирамох модарам Аврупо Дания Австралия	калонтар зеботар хунуктар бехтар	аст.
--	--	---	------

5. Create new words from the following nouns and adjectives, using the suffixes "-ū" ("-zū", "-6ū") and "-ucmon", as appropriate; then write a sentence using each of the new words:

хона	девор	шахр	сафед	сиёх	бахор	давлат	об	бахр	дўст	
точик	⊽збек	афгон	англис	казок	марказ ⁶	чануб	шарк	молар	оила.	

6. Transform the following sentences, as shown in the example:

Example: Душанбе шахри калон аст.

⇒ Душанбе калонтарин шахр аст.

⇒ Душанбе шахри аз хама калон аст.

- а. Бахор фасли зебо аст.
- Б. Дилором духтари доно аст.
- с. Хитой давлати калон аст.
- d. Ин колини зебо аст.
- е. Марк дусти наздики ман аст.
- f. Укёнуси Ором калон аст.
- 7. Answer the following questions:
 - а. Шумо дар кучо зиндагй мекунед?
 - b. Ватани Шумо кучост?
 - с. Забони модарии Шумо чй?
 - d. Кишвари Шумо дар кадом қитъа аст?
 - е. Пойтахти давлати Шумо кадом шахр аст?
 - f. Кишвари Шумо бо кадом давлатхо хамсархад аст?
 - g. Дар ватани Шумо куххо хастанд?
 - h. Дар ватани Шумо кадом миллатхо зиндагй мекунанд?
 - і. Забони расмии кишвари Шумо чй?

⁶ Марказ means "centre."

8. Read the following text and then express the same information in English:

Номи ман Алберто аст. Ман сию дусола мебошам. Ман зан ва як писар дорам. Номи занам Мария аст. \overline{y} сисола аст. Номи писарам Малдини аст. Ман мухандис мебошам. Занам духтур аст. Писарам дар мактаб мехонад. Мо пештар дар шахри Рим зиндагй мекардем. Холо мо дар шахри Неапол зиндагй мекунем. Падару модари мо дар Рим зиндагй мекунанд. Мо хар мох як маротиба ба назди падару модарамон меравем. Забони модарии мо итолиёй аст. Ман забони англисиро низ медонам. Занам забони фаронсавиро медонад. Неапол нисбат ба Рим хурдтар аст, аммо барои? зиндагй бехтар аст.

9. Read the proverbs below. Memorise any that you might be able to use in conversation: If you know a language, you may know the Забон донй - чахон донй. world Сафар кардан чахон дидан аст. To travel is to see the world. A piece of dirt from your homeland is better Пораи хоки ватан аз тахти Сулаймон бех. than the throne of Soloman. A man without a homeland is like a Одами беватан - булбули бечаман. nightingale without a garden. An axe wound will heal, Захми табар меравад, but a hurt of the tongue will stay. захми забон мемонал. Conversation should be concise and full of Сухан бисёр дону андаке гуй, insights: don't say one thought a hundred Якеро сад магу, садро яке гуй. times; fill one speech with a hundred ideas.

САНЧИШ

1. Give answers to the following questions:

- Фазилат, забони модарии Шумо кадом аст?
- 2. Шумо дар кучо таваллуд шудед?
- 3. Фарангис, ту кадом забонхоро медонй?
- 4. Фаронса дар кадом қитъа аст?
- 5. Зодгохи Шумо кадом шахр аст?
- 6. У забони англисиро медонад?
- 7 Eapou means "for."

-

- 7. Олмон калон аст ё Испания?
-8. Калонтарин шахри кишвари Шумо кадом аст?
-
 9. Миллати падару модари Шумо кадом аст?

OUIZ

-10. Марк забони точикиро дар кучо ом⊽хт?
- 11. Баландтарин кухи чахон кадом аст?
- 12. Гармтарин қитъа кадом аст?

-

- 2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the following answers:
- 1. ... ? 7. ... ? Точикистон бо Ўзбекистон, Қирғизистон, Хитой ва Афгонистон ҳамсарҳад аст. 2. ? 8. ... ?
- 2. ... ?
 Не, ман забони русиро намедонам.
- 3. ... ?
- Миллати Марк немис аст. 4 - ... ?
- Падару модарам дар Хиндустон зиндагй мекунанд.
- 5. ...? – Пештар Мари дар Эрон кор мекард.
- 6. ...? Бародарам аз ман калонтар аст.

- Хунуктарин қитъа Антарктида аст. 9. ... ?
- Ватани Жан Фаронса аст.
- Забони давлатии Гурчистон гурчй аст.
- 11. ... ?
- Маскав аз Алмаато дуртар аст.
- 12. ... ?
 - Не, намедонам.
- 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson eight and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.
- 4. Write a description about yourself similar to that in exercise 8.

Дарси 9

Lesson 9

Узвхои бадан

Parts of the Body

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

One of the most important characteristics of the Tajiki language is the many meanings conveyed by the words used for the parts of the body and their prevalence in the language. For instance, consider the word "cap": in addition to referring to part of the body, the head, it can also be found in many expressions, such as cap uydan (to begin), capu pox (the end of the street, on the corner), sk cap zychand (one sheep), sk cap anzyp (a bunch of grapes), cap ba cap uydan (to quarrel), capu kanobapo zym kapdan (to not know what to do), capu camp (start of a line of text), capu bakm (on time, punctual), cap cynypdan (to give oneself for a cause), cap dodan (to let go, to divorce, to launch), cap as man uydo kapdan (to kill). In addition, the word cap appears as the root in many compound words: e.g. capnyu (cover, lid), capdop (head, leader), capmyxanduc (chief engineer), capdyxmyp (head doctor), capmymaxaccuc (chief specialist), capbasup (prime minister), capdyxmy (head doctor), capsapana (crazy), capocap / cap mo cap (everywhere, in all of ...), capy nuboc (clothes). The same sorts of lists could be compiled for other words, such as dun, uaum, dacm, and no. There are many interesting expressions containing parts of the body, a few of which are given below:

чашм ба рох будан	to wait for
чашми касе гирифтан / чашм расидан	to be given the evil eye, to be jinxed
чашм ало кардан	to wish someone ill, to envy
чашм равшан шудан	to be "blooming" (about a new mother), to look healthy (after being ill)
дил сари каф ниходан (нех (них))	to take a risk
дил гум задан	to be lost in nostalgic reflection or to wish for something that cannot be
дил бохтан	to like, to love
дилтанг шудан	to be sad
аз даст додан	to lose (metaphorically; not about possessions)
ба даст овардан	to gain; to conquer
хуни чигар хурдан	to be distressed, depressed
мижа тах накардан.	to have a sleepless night

As can be imagined, such use means there are many proverbs and sayings that make reference to parts of the body. Some of these appear later in this lesson.

дандон

tooth

	ЛУҒАТ	VOCABUI		
рўй / рў	face	бинй	nose	
чашм	eye	гўш	ear	
дахон	mouth	лаб	lip	

tongue

забон

	head	ком	gum
cap	heau brain	нохун	fingernail, toenail
майна	hand, arm	ангушти даст	finger
даст пой / по	foot, leg	ангушти по	toe
	skin	каф	palm
пўст	cheek	манах	chin
pyxcop	hair	1	forehead
муй / му		пешонй	moustache
риш	beard	муйлаб	
қош / абрў	eyebrow	мижа (pl. мижгон)	eyelash Lasla
бадан/тан	body	тахтапушт / пушт	back knee
китф /kift/	shoulder	зону	
гардан	neck ,	¦ гул <u>ў</u>	throat
сина	breast, chest	шикам	abdomen, belly
меъда	stomach	рўда	intestine
дил	heart	шуш	lung
чигар	liver	гурда	kidney
хун	blood	par	vein
доштан (дор)	to have	бардоштан	to lift, to raise
бурдан (бар)	to carry	(бардор)	
буридан (бур)	to cut	(нохун) гирифтан	to cut (nails)
(муй) тарошидан	to cut (hair)	(гир)	to comb
(тарош)		шона кардан	
шустан (шуй)	to wash	шумурдан (шумур)	to count
зистан (зй) /	to live	мурдан (мур, мир)	to die
зиндагй кардан		куштан (куш)	to kill
гиря кардан	to cry	дод задан (зан)	to shout
хандидан (ханд)	to laugh	табассум кардан	to smile
бўсидан (бўс)	to kiss		
рост (дасти рост)	right	чап (дасти чап)	left
дароз	long	кўтох	short
калон	large	хурд	small
васеъ	broad	танг	narrow
баланд	high	паст	low
қадбаланд	tall	кадпаст	short
хароб / лоғар	thin	фарбех	fat
зӯр / боқувват	strong	заиф	weak (also: "the
ботамкин	gentle, calm	*	weaker sex")
чиркин / ифлос	dirty	тоза	clean
кӯр∕нобино	blind	кар	deaf
гунг	dumb	кал	bald
гирён	crying	хандон	smiling
нуронй	shiny	монда / хаста	tired
луч	naked	чингила	curly
			•

СЎХБАТХО

1.

- Салом, Карима!
- Салом, Сохира, ту чй хел?
- Нагз дугона, ту чй?
- Рахмат, ман хам нагз.
- Карима, ба ту чй хел мардон маъкул?
- Ба ман? Ман мардони қадбаланду доноро нағз мебинам. Тү чӣ?
- Ба ман мардони хушрую хунарманд маъкул.

2

- Чек, ту забони точикиро медонй?
- Ха, медонам.
- «Еуе» ба точикй чй мешавад?
- «Чашм».
- «Face» чӣ?
- «Face»-ро ба точикй «руй» мегуянд.
- «Heart»-ро ба точикй чй мегуянд?
- «Дил».
- Рахмат, Чек.
- Намеарзад.

3.

- Салом, Чаъфар! Шинос шав, ин кас хамкори нави мо Робия.
- Чй хел номи зебо, аз шиносой бо Шумо шодам. Робия.
- Ташаккур, номи Шумо чй?
- Номам Чаъфар.
- Номи Шумо хам зебо, Чаъфар.
- Рахмат Робия. Аммо Шумо... Факат номатон не, балки чашму рую комати Шумо хам хеле зебо...
- Ташаккур, Шумо ба гаппартой усто будед...
- Не, Робия, ин хакикат аст.
- Рахмат, Чаъфар. Мебахшед, ман бояд равам. Хайр, сухбат боқй!
- Хайр, то боздид!

4

- Медонй, Ибодчон, дина ман бо як духтари бисёр зебо шинос шудам.
- Хайр чй? Духтарони зебо бисёранд.
- Дуруст мегуй, аммо он духтар тамоман дигар хел. Чашмони калони сиёх дорад, комати мавзун, муйхои дароз. Ба як нигох ошик шудам...

DIALOGUES

- Hello, Karima.
- Hello, Sohira, how are you?
- Fine, and you?
- I'm all right, thanks.
- Karima, what kind of men do you like?
- Me? I like tall, clever men. What about vou?
- I like handsome, skilful men.
- Jack, do you know Tajiki?
- Yes. I do.
- So what is "eve" in Tajiki?
- "Chashm."
- And what is "face"?
- "Face" in Tajiki is "rüy."
- And what is "heart" in Tajiki?
- "Dil."
- Thanks, Jack,
- Not at all.
- Hello, Ja'far! Let me introduce you to our new colleague, Robiya.
- What a nice name! I'm pleased to meet you,
 Robiva
- Thanks, what's your name?
- My name's Ja'far.
- Your name's nice too, Ja'far.
- Thanks, Robiya. But you... Not only your name, but your eyes, face and stature are very beautiful too.
- Thanks for the compliment!
- But, Robiya, it's the truth!
- Thanks, Ja'far. Excuse me, I must go now. Goodbye, we'll talk again!
- See you!
- Ibodjon, guess what? I met a wonderful girl yesterday.
- So? There are many beautiful girls.
- You're right, but this girl was different. She has big black eyes, a shapely figure and long hair. I fell in love at first sight...

- Табрик! Ақалан номашро медонй?
- Ха, номаш хам бисёр зебо Дилшода.
- Дилшода? Намедонй, ў кор мекунад ё мехонад?
- Ў дар донишгох мехонад.
- Дар кадом доништох мехонад?
- Дар донишгохи тиббй.
- Донишгохи тиббй? Насабашро медонй?
- Як дакика. Агар хато накунам, Аминзода. Ҳа, ҳа, Аминзода... Ибодчон, ба ту чй шуд?
- У хохари ман аст!

- Congratulations! Do you at least know her name?
- Yes, her name is very beautiful too Dilshoda!
- Dilshoda? Do you know whether she works or studies?
- She studies at university.
- At which university is she studying?
- At the medical university.
- At the medical? Do you know her surname?
- Just a moment. If I'm not mistaken, her surname is Aminzoda. Yes, yes, Aminzoda... What's the matter with you, Ibodion?
- She's my sister!

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Compound Verbs

Many Tajiki verbs are compound verbs and these are divided into two categories: nominal and verbal. Information about verbal compound verbs will be given in lesson thirteen. Nominal compound verbs are formed by associating nouns and adjectives with basic auxiliary verbs such as $\kappa ap \partial an (namy \partial an)$, $my \partial an (zap \partial u \partial an)$,

Nominal particle	Auxiliary verb	Nominal compound verb	Meaning
ором		ором кардан	to calm
зиндагй		зиндагй кардан	to live
ранг	10 m 20 H	ранг кардан	to paint
cap	кардан	сар кардан	to start
қуфл		қуфл кардан	to lock
калон		калон кардан	to raise [a child]
сабз		сабз шудан	to grow
ором	шудан	ором шудан	to quieten down
об		об шудан	to melt
гам	พรีเฉพณะ	ғам хурдан	to be anxious
шамол	хўрдан	шамол хўрдан	to catch a cold
дӯст		дўст доштан	to love
нигох	доштан	нигох доштан	to keep, hold
фиреб	T0 T0 V	фиреб додан	to lie
азоб	додан	азоб додан	to cause trouble

Used in this way, the auxiliary verbs $\kappa ap \partial a n$ and $n a m y \partial a n$ are synonyms of each other, as are $m y \partial a n$ and $m a p \partial a n$ i.e. $\kappa a n o n$ $m a p \partial a n$ (to raise, to bring $m a p \partial a n$), $\kappa a n o n$ $m a p \partial a n$ (to grow, to grow $m a p \partial a n$).

Active and Passive Verbs

Verbs in the passive voice are formed in Tajiki through the use of auxiliary verbs. The main verb appears as a past participle!, formed by dropping the final "-n" from the "-an" of the infinitive:

_	Acti	ve	Passiv	е
	хондан	to read	хонда шудан	to be read
	гирифтан	to take	гирифта шудан	to be taken
	сохтан	to build	сохта шудан	to be built
	куштан	to kill	кушта шудан	to be killed

Ман хона сохтам. Хона сохта шуд. Ман хона месозам. I built a house. The house was built. I am going to build a house.

The house is going to be built. Хона сохта мешавад.

For nominal compound verbs that use the auxiliary verbs καρθαι and μαμγθαι, the passive voice is formed by substituting these with the auxiliary verbs wydan and zapdudan:

Acti	ve	I	Passive
гарм кардан	to warm up	гарм шудан	to become warm
об кардан	to melt	об шудан	to melt (by itself)
куфл кардан	to lock	куфл шудан	to be locked
сар кардан	to begin	сар шудан	to be started

Модарам обро гарм кард. Оби чойник гарм шуд. Модарам обро гарм мекунад. Оби чойник гарм мешавад.

My mother heated the water. The water in the kettle became hot. My mother is heating the water. The water in the kettle is heating up.

Usually the phrase as mapachu is used with the passive in order to identify the agent of the verb; as mapadu is thus the equivalent of "by" in English:

Ман аз тарафи хукумати Амрико ба Вашингтон даъват шудам.

I was invited to Washington by the American Government.

Absolute Future Tense

The absolute future tense is formed by using the auxiliary verb xocman followed by the past tense verb stem of the main verb. It is used for actions that will happen exclusively in the future. The auxiliary verb xocman takes the subject marker verb endings and always comes before the verb stem. This verb form is a feature of literary Tajiki and is not used in colloquial Tajiki. In colloquial Tajiki, future ideas are expressed using the present-future tense (as described in lesson six).

Conjugation of the verb "рафтан" ("to go") in the absolute future tense

-	xox-	-ам	рафт	(ман) хохам рафт	I will go
	xox-	-Й	рафт	(ту) хохи рафт	you will go
	xox-	-ад	рафт	(ў, вай) хохад рафт	he/she will go
	xox-	-ем	рафт	(мо) хохем рафт	we will go
	XOX-	-ед	рафт	(шумо) хохед рафт	you will go
	xox-	-анд	рафт	(онхо) хоханд рафт	they will go

When used in this way as an auxiliary part of the absolute future tense, the verb xocman loses its original meaning of "to want" and merely conveys information about the person and number of the subject of the verb:

Ман ба Маскав хохам рафт.

I will go to Moscow.

Фируз баъд аз се руз хохад омад.

Firüz will come after three days.

To form the negative in the absolute future tense, the prefix "na-" is joined to the auxiliary verb, xocman:

Ман нахохам рафт.

I will not go.

Τν μαχοχῦ гуфт.

You will not say.

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

1. Choose appropriate adjectives for the following nouns and make a sentence from each: Example: Чашмони кабуд. Чашмони Наргис кабуд аст.

Nouns:	рӯй	чашм	лаб	рухсор	г <u>ў</u> ш
wouns:	даст	қад		дил	мўй
4.11	зебо	сиёх		сурх	баланд
Adjectives: nact		пок		дароз	

2. Complete the following table by writing the verbs in the other tenses, using the same person and number as shown for each verb:

Example: рафтан: рафтам ⇒ меравам: мерафтам: хохам рафт

гуфтан	гуфтӣ			
кор кардан		кор мекунад		
нишастан	нишастем			
омадан			меомаданд	
дидан				хохед дид
нушидан			менўшидед	
рўфтан		мерўбам		
навиштан	навишт			
зиндагй кардан			зиндагū мекарданд	
хандидан		механдад		
хондан				хохам хонд

¹ A participle is a word combining the properties of a verb and an adjective.

3. Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings: Ехатрles: <u>Падарам фардо аз Душанбе хохад омад</u>.

Падарам фардо ба Душанбе хохад рафт.

MO	фардо		Эрон	
шумо	хафтаи оянда		Хитой	
Сулхия	баъди ду руз		Помир	
Чан	пасфардо	аз	Хиндустон	хох омад
Микело	пагох	ба	Фаронса	хох рафт.
онхо	пагохи дигар		Токио	• •
хохарат	соли оянда		сафар	
ту	се руз баъд		кор	

4. Transform the verbs in the following sentences from the present-future to absolute future tense:

Example: Бародарам аз Маскав меояд.

⇒ <u>Бародарам аз Маскав хохад омад.</u>

- а. Фардо мо ба Кургонтеппа меравем.
- b. Пас аз як хафта Мартин аз Австралия меояд.
- с. Ман дар Душанбе панч сол зиндагй мекунам.
- d. Хаким ин гапро ба хеч кас намегуяд.
- е. Онхо чойи гарм менўшанд.
- f. Фароғат ба мактаб меравад.
- 5. Change the tense of the verbs in the following sentences, as shown in the example:

Example: Ман дар Душанбе кор мекунам.

⇒Ман дар Душанбе кор кардам.

⇒ Ман дар Душанбе кор мекардам.

⇒ Ман дар Душанбе кор хохам кард.

- а. Падарам дар Берлин зиндаги мекунад.
- b. Онхо аз Амрико омаданд.
- с. Дилноза дар донишгох мехонад.
- d. Томас ба Швейсария хохад рафт.
- е. Гулнор ба Хосият мактуб навишт.
- f. Ситора писар таваллуд кард.
- 6. Make sentences using the verbs in the imperative:

- а. Гапи маро (гуш кардан).
- b. Дасту руятро (шустан).
- с. Аз хоб (хестан). e. Илтимос, дарро (пўшидан).
- d. Мархамат, (даромадан). f. Ин китобро (хондан).
- g. Ба наздам (омадан).
- h. Ин гапро ба хеч кас (нагуфтан).
- і. Ту ба назди ў (нарафтан).
- ј. Ин чо (нишастан).
- 7. Transform the following verbs into the passive voice:

Example: навиштан ⇒ <u>навишта шудан</u>.

·				
хондан	дидан	шунидан	гуфтан	ранг кардан
даъват кардан	гарм кардан	об кардан	қуфл кардан	куштан.

Як даст бесадост.	One hand is silent. ²
— Дигар-дигару чигар-чигар.	Someone else is someone else, one's own beloved is one's own beloved.
— Панч панча баробар нест.	The five fingers are not the same.
— Дар чашми худ кўх намебинад, Дар чашми ман кох мебинад.	In his own eye he can't see a mountain, But in my eye he can see a piece of straw.
	c. One should see Laili with the eyes of Majnun. ³
Гу̀шт бе устухон намешавад.	Meat doesn't come without bones.
— Гуштро аз нохун чудо карда намешавал	You can't separate meat from the claw.
— Сар раваду сир не.	It's better to separate the head from the body than to reveal a secret.
— Агар бинй набошад, чашм чашмро мехўрад.	If there was no nose, one eye would consume the other.4
Забони сурх сари сабз медихад барбод.	The red tongue kills the living head.5
Гапро ба г <u>ў</u> ш халқа кардан.	To put the words like a ring into an ear.6
— Фарзанди бад чй гуна аст? Мисли ангушти шашум – агар бурранд дард мекунад, агар монанд, айб бувад.	
— Сар амон бошад, тоқ й ёфт мешавад.	If the head is sound, a hat can be found for it.7

8. Read the proverbs below. Memorise any that you might be able to use in conversation:

² That is, "It takes two to make an argument."

³ Лайлй and Мачиун are the "Romeo and Juliet" of Persian literature.

⁴ This can refer to two people who don't get along or can mean "The eye is never satisfied."

⁵ That is, "The tongue is a person's worst enemy."

[&]quot;That is, "To not forget what was said."

⁷ That is, health is more important than everything else, used particularly in connection with a single person who has not yet found a spouse.

ХОНИШ

READING

1. Read the following text, and discuss the question that follows:

Таъбири хоб

Подшохе хоб дид, ки хамаи дандонхояш афтодааст. Фолбинеро даъват кард ва маънои хоби худро аз ў пурсид. Фолбин гуфт:

Хамаи хешу табори Шумо дар пеши чашматон хоханд мурд.

Подшох дар газаб шуд ва фармон дод, ки сари фолбинро аз тан чудо кунанд. Фолбини дигареро даъват кард ва аз ў хам маъной хоби худро пурсид. Фолбини дуюм

- Шумо бар ивази корхои некатон нисбат ба хамаи хешовандони худ дарозтар умр хохед дид.

Подшох хурсанд шуд ва фармуд, ки ба фолбин тухфаи хубе диханд.

Vocabulary:

таъбир афтодан тухфа хешу табор / хешовандон	interpretation to fall out present, gift relatives	хоб дидан даъват кардан фолбин дар газаб шудан	to have a dream to invite fortune-teller to become angry
фармон додан	to (give an) order	умр дидан	to live
хурсанд шудан	to be happy	фармудан (фармо)	to order

Translation of some expressions and idioms:	
Маънои хоби худ аз ў пурсид.	Asked him the meaning of his dream.
Сари фолбинро аз тан чудо кунанд.	They should kill the fortune-teller.
Бар ивази корхои некатон умри дароз	Because of your good works you will have a
хохед дид.	long life.
Дар пеши чашматон хоханд мурд.	They will die in your sight.

Discuss the following questions:

Оё дар байни таъбирхои фолбинхо фарке хаст?

Ба назари точикон, хобхо маъно доранд. Агар хоби бад бинанд, ин хобро ба оби равон бояд накл кунанд ва мегуянд, ки хобашон бо воситаи ин хел наклкуни дар оянда ичро намешавад. Вакте ки Шумо хоб мебинел, чй кор мекунел?

More useful vocabulary:

фарқ	difference	назар	opinion, view
маъно доштан	to mean, to signify	равон	flowing, running
бояд	must, should	накл кардан	to tell, to narrate
бо воситаи	by means of	нақлкунй	act of telling
ичро шудан	to be fulfilled	аломат / нишон /	sign, omen, portent
бовар кардан	to believe	нишона	

2. Read the following text, and discuss the question that follows:

Бехтарин аъзо

Р⊽зе Хоча ба Лукмон8 гуфт:

- Гусфанде бикуш ва бехтарин аъзои онро барои ман биёр.

Лукмон гусфанде кушт ва дилу забони онро ба назди Хоча бурд.

Рӯзи дигар Хоча гуфт:

- Гусфанде бикуш ва бадтарин аъзои онро барои ман биёр.

Лукмон гусфанди дигаре кушт ва боз дилу забони онро ба назди Хоча бурд.

Хоча хайрон шуду гуфт:

- Ин чй маънй дорад?

Лукмон гуфт:

- Хеч чиз бехтар аз дилу забон нест, агар онхо пок бошанд ва хеч чиз бадтар аз дилу забон нест, агар онхо нопок бошанд.

Vocabulary

rocuoniury.			
аъзо (pl.: узвхо)	parts	Хоча	Boss, Master
хеч чиз	nothing	пок (нопок)	pure (impure)

Kill a sheep.
Bring me.
Brought to the master.
The master was surprised and said.
What does it mean?
If they are pure.

Discuss the following:

Дар ин хикоят дилу забон маънои рафтору гуфторро доранд. Якчанд мисоли рафтору гуфтори пок ва нопокро накл кунед.

More useful vocabulary:

хикоят	story, tale	якчанд	several, a few
мисол	example	рафтор	behaviour
гуфтор	speech	масал	fable, parable
макол	saving, proverb	;	

3. Read the poem, and discuss the question that follows:

Ёд дорам, ба вакти зодани ту, Хама хандон буданду ту гирён. Ончунон зй, ки вакти мурдани ту, Хама гирён шаванду ту хандон. $Cab \partial \bar{u}$

Vocabulary and expressions:

ёд доштан	to remember
ба вақти зодани ту	at the time of your birth
Ончунон зй. ки	Live in such a way that

^{*} Лукмон, or Лукмони Хаким is the name used for any wise person in stories and folk tales.

96 A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki

Discuss the following:

Ба фикри Шумо, аз руйи маънои ин шеър, мо чй тавр бояд зиндагй кунем?

More useful vocabulary:

шеър роет

і чй тавр

how, in what way

САНЧИШ

QUIZ

 Give answers to the following questions: Ту чанд дандон дорй? 	7. – Чаро ту гиря мекунй?
 2. – Қади ӯ баланд аст ё паст?	 8. – Ту монда шудӣ ё не?
 3. – Бародарат аз Париж кай хохад омад?	 9. – Мартин кай ба Австрия меравад?
 4. – Ба ту чй хел духтархо маъкул?	10. – Як даст чанд ангушт дорад?
 5. – Кй зеботар аст, Дилором ё Назокат?	 11. – Ту бо дасти рост менависй ё бо дасти чап?
 6. – Ин мактубро кй навишт? 	 12. – Чашмони Аня чй хеланд?
2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the j	
1. – ?	7. – ?
 Духтарам понздахсола аст. 	 Падарам қоматбаланд аст.
2. – ?	8. – ?
– Ман писарони қадбаландро д ў ст медорам.	– Ахмад фардо аз Тошканд хохад омад.
3. – ?	9. – ?
 Собир аз Асад донотар аст. 	– Ҳа, ин духтар ба ман маъкул.
4. – ?	10. – ?
– Мӯйҳои ӯ сиёҳу кӯтоҳ аст.	– Инро ба ман Салим гуфт.
5. – ?	11. – ?
– «Foot»-ро ба точикй «пой» мегўянд.	– Ха, ман хар рўз дандонхоямро мешўям.
6. – ?	12. – ?
– Чашмони ў кабуданд.	– Дирўз омадам.

- 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson nine and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.
- 4. Write short dialogues using the words and expressions in the commentary. If possible, keep a list of any other compound words and expressions you come across that include parts of the body, including examples to show the context in which they are used.

Дарси 10

Lesson 10

Шахр – Куча

The City – The Street

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

Tajikistan is an agricultural country. A large part of its population live in the country. The largest city in Tajikistan is Dushanbe, a comparative new city formed in 1924 when Tajikistan was established as an autonomous country. Previously, in the location of what is now Dushanbe, there were three villages, the largest of which was named Dushanbe, after the market that was held there every Monday. In the 1920s and 30s, many people were brought from more developed Tajiki cities – such as Bukhara, Samarkand, and the Sughd region in northern Tajikistan – to provide the capital with the technical skills and expertise it needed. During the days of the Soviet Union, the city developed rapidly and it is now the political, scientific, cultural, and industrial centre of Tajikistan. The city's population is very mixed and its native population is very small, most people having come to the capital from other parts of the country. Indeed, it is possible to find representatives from every region of Tajikistan in Dushanbe. This heterogeneity results in what is one of the most fascinating aspects of life in Dushanbe – namely, that there is no single way of life. The people have come from a variety of cities and regions and they continue to observe their own original customs and traditions.

In Tajikistan there are many ancient cities, rich in history. From among these, Khujand and Istaravshan, Panjakent and Shahriston (in northern Tajikistan), Hisor and Kulob are perhaps most noteworthy. In addition to these, the cities of Samarkand and Bukhara (in Uzbekistan), and Marv and Chorjui (in Turkmenistan) are also acknowledged as ancient centres of Tajiki science and culture. During the Soviet period, modern cities were built in Tajikistan, with large industrial complexes and hydroelectric power stations, including Ghafurov, Qairoqqum (in northern Tajikistan), Norak and Tursunzoda, Yovon and Roghun.

Streets in Tajikistan are mostly named after famous politicians, scientists, and authors. As a result of changes in politics, many names of cities and streets have been changed. For instance, from the middle of the 1930s to the start of the 1960s, Dushanbe was known as *Сталинобод* and, as late as the 1990s, *Хучанд* was known as *Ленинобод*. In Dushanbe, *Ленин* Avenue has become $P\bar{y}\partial a\kappa\bar{u}$ Avenue, $IIymoscku\bar{u}$ Avenue has become IIcmoun Comon \bar{u} Avenue, and so on.

As was the case with the names of countries, many errors arose in the transcription of street names into English as a result of basing these on the Russian names. Russian changed the names of streets into the genitive case, so that various suffixes were added to their names. When writing such names in English now, the original form of the name should be used: e.g. Pavlov St. should be written instead of Pavlova St., Qarotegin St. instead of Karateginskaya St., etc.

In Dushanbe there are various types of public transport: buses (αεποδυς), trolley-buses (προπλεμόνς), vans that follow and can be stopped anywhere along set routes (μικροαεποδυς) and taxis. In all of these, fares are paid in cash. The former system whereby passengers purchased tickets has been discontinued. However, it is still possible to use month passes for the public buses and trolley-buses. The first three of these forms of transport each have their own standard rate for fares. When using a taxi, passengers should determine the price with the driver in advance, so as to avoid potential argument later.

чойгир асфалтпуш

опуда

баланд {овоз} разург / калон

> {бо почта} (фирист)

фиристодан

харидан (хар)

истодан (ист)

сявора рафтан сявор шудан

гаштан (гард)

тэпид втпин

изрказ

махаппа

poxry3ap

милися

илсчил

консерт

театр

музей

магозан китоб

китобфурўшй /

мубодилан арз

[универмаг]

китобхона

90нк

φλ<u>δλ</u>πιοχ

они9

doε09

200

гузаштан (гузар)

кардан рондан (рон) / хай

ןסכמופק

pəɪnɪjod

ληγοιπδ

ouinb of

puəs oj

(nq 01

do18 01

əp11 01

uo 128 01

u.in1 01

55010 01

197/211

2.111122

district :pooysnoqy812u

λα-xəssɒd

นซเนอวijod

ənbsouı

1.1221102

ιμεαιιε

шпәѕпш

pookshop

οπικενολ εχομαυβε

qebartment store

ιιριαιλ

раиқ

Suipjind

เองเหตุ

улр₫

pəŋpydsv

{əsiou} pnoj

 $\{1sod \ \land q\}$

great, huge

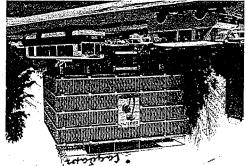
wn in square brackets are Russian words used in colloquial Tajiki.	- MOLOS SUOM
rally meaning "row, line," is used in literary Tajiki to mean "truin."	

restaurant	ьесторан :	doys	магоза [магазин]
əfpɔ	суолкуона		чойхона
•	(тдоподея) йовьх		[BOK39U \ASBZSI\]
αίνρονι	фурушох / майдони	ιαίλναγ station	истгохи рохи охан
əannbs	нодйьм	dos-snq 'uossoss	исттох
dust, dirt	, ASHL	นุเทเนทอ§	фаввора
ditch, irrigation ditch	<u> </u>	Romans	одтэм
jəuun;	туннеп	ə8pi.iq	κ <u>λ</u> υδλκ \ υλυ
corner	кλна	เอนเอว '8นานเทา	гардиш
านอนเองเอส	иисизгри	crossing, crosswalk	Lλasbtox
	[светофор]	นดุบุวอรมอบนา	
દામશ્રીદ દાશુમાર	дурогаки рох	crossroads,	норраха
מאפטווב' עומוע צוו.פפן	нодэих	ιοαφμαλ	рохи мошингард
199118	kyda	урд 'ррол	xoď
kerosine	карасин	110	равгани мошин
રહાાલા		qiesel	conapka /salyarka/
petrol station, petrol	еснзинфурушй	petrol	рензин
ίτοιίεν	вробача	כמגן	apoda
μοι το δίεν	подхдан	<i>1</i> әә <i>ү</i> м	ехфеь
	[самолёт]²	ગાંદ પ્રદોહ	цучарха [велосипед]
αςιοδησυς	омивпоавх	nrotorbike	мотосикл
ςοιμιωσυμακλ}	маршрутка	ıknck	мотини роркит
əəs} "snqoлəлш"	иикроявтобус /		сябукрав
шол	трамвай	כמג	инитом / нитом
snq-kəjjosi	троплейбус	snq	автобус
{unusou {o} u suasum	вагон	ומאו	дякси
ırain	поезд / катор!	ı.ausborı	няклиєт

VOCABULARY

Dushanbe's department stores, Caplappr. A mapupytka and trolley-bus, passing one of

IVJAII



in this lesson. directions are provided in the dialogues expressions for asking and giving basser-by on the street; various particular location, you may ask a If you do not know how to get to a

".бэдоб хогин шибдаг dro,, so "conne koned" of "dap expression such as "xamun qo uemed," they want to get off, usually using an passengers have to tell the driver when passed to the front after getting on and one would hail a taxi. Payment is these as it drives past in the same way as mapupynma. Passengers stop one of wakpoasmobyc are referred to Tajiki, colloquial

– Мархамат, гузаред.	– Certainly.
– Биёед, чоямона ³ иваз кунем.	- Can we change places?
– He.	.oN -
- Мебахшед, Шумо хозир мефуроед?	– Excuse me, are you getting off now?
1. [colloquial]	

190TVIA	CXXPVLXO

такрибан

/ нанимхьт

рнит / мофо

нишон додан изрвоз кардан

киро намудан

фуромадан (фуро)

фодть уддил / фодть

фэромадан (фаро) /

ньдүш доеитни

нитони / сурога

[фядтш] вмидвр

боғи ҳайвонот

кино / кинотеатр

кино / фицм

[raqang1]

намоишгох

[госпитал]

беморхона

мехмонхоня

универсам

гарабхона

порухона

бтроп

кчсся

[snpec]

карита

куцисо

TO33

57	α	α	T/T	$\boldsymbol{\alpha}$
. 7 71	1.7	,,,	ν	

S	I	29	o	7	V	7	a

αροηι՝ αbbroximαίεly
บาออาว
jnfəəpəd 'jəinb
านทางอย่านา

охиста мухим	slowly inportant
изроз каразн	comeone else) someone else)
пардохтан (пардоз) Надод пуп \	And of

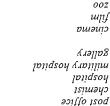
λοd 01
MOYS 01
λ[f 0]
orin ot
cc. o.



fine, penalty

уэлпцэ





restaurant with music

2npermarket

12104

2. [colloquial]

- Шумо истгохи ояндаба⁴ мефуроед?
- Ха, мефуроям.
- Пештар гузаред, тайёр шавем.
- Майлаш, хозир.

3.

- Намедонед, то фурушгохи марказй (CУМ)⁵ чанд истгохи дигар хаст?
- Баъди як истгох фуроед.
- Рахмат.
- Саломат бошед.

- Намедонед, ин троллейбус то сафорати Амрико меравад?
- Намедонам, шояд равад. Бехтараш аз дигар кас пурсед.

5.

- Намедонед, то сафорати Туркия чй хел рафтан мумкин?
- Ба троллейбуси 1 ё автобусхои 3, 42 шинед. Дар истгохи «Ватан» фуроеду камтар ақиб биёед. Сафорати Туркия дар сари рох аст.
- Рахмат.

- Мебахшед, пурсидан мумкин?
- Мархамат.
- То бозори «Саховат» чй хел рафтан мумкин?
- Ба он тарафи рох гузареду ба автобуси 29 ё 18 шинел.
- Рахмати калон.
- Намеарзад.

7. [colloquial]

- Мебахшел, намедонед хонаи Сайфиддин дар кучо?
- Не, ман инчой нестам.⁶ Аз ягон каси дигар пурсед.
- Хеч гап не, рахмат.

- Мебахшед, як чиза пурсам.
- Мархамат.

- Are you getting off at the next stop?
- Yes I am.
- Please, move forward so we're ready.
- OK. I'll do so now.
- Do you know how many bus stops there are to "SUM"?
- You should get off after one stop.
- Thanks.
- Not at all.
- Do you know whether this trolley-bus goes to the American Embassy?
- I don't know; maybe it does. You should ask someone else.
- Do you know how to go to the Turkish Embassy?
- Take trolley-bus number 1 or bus number 3 or 42. Get off at "Vatan" and go back a little. The Turkish Embassy is on the corner.
- Thanks.
- Excuse me, can I ask you a question?
- Of course.
- How can I get to "Sakhovat" market?
- Cross the street and take bus number 29 or
- Thank you very much.
- Not at all
- Excuse me, do you know where Saifiddin
- No. I don't live here. Please ask someone else.
- Never mind. Thank you.
- Excuse me, can I ask you something?
- Go ahead

- Мехмонхонаи бехтарин дар Душанбе кадом аст?
- Ба фикрам, бехтаринаш мехмонхонаи «Душанбе». Аммо мехмонхонахои «Точикистон» ва «Авесто» низ бал нестанл.
- Намегуед, то мехмонхонаи «Душанбе» чй хел рафтан мумкин?
- Ба автобусхои 3, 40, 42, 23 ва троллейбуси 1 савор шавед. Дар истгохи «Мехмонхонаи Душанбе» ё «Садбарг»⁷ мефуроед.
- Бо маршруткахо хам рафтан мумкин?
- Албатта. Ба он чо микроавтобусхои 8 ва 3 мераванд.
- Рахмати калон ба Шумо.
- Саломат бощел.

- -- Мебахшед, мумкин бощад, тезтар хай кунед.
- Тинчй-мй?
- Ха. тинчй. Ман боял пас аз дах дакика дар фурудгох бошам.
- Парво накунед, Худо хохад⁸ пас аз дах дакика ба он чо мерасем.

10.

- Сино, ту медонй, донишгохи давлатй дар кучост?
- Ха, медонам, аммо бинохои донишгох хеле бисёранд, ба ту кадом факулта лозим?
- Ба ман факултаи физика лозим.
- Факултан физика дар пахлун бинон асосй That faculty is very close to the main аст. Он дар хиёбони Рудаки.
- Намегуй, ба он чо чй хел равам?
- Он дур нест. Рост рав, тахминан баъд аз It is not far. Go straight, and after about 300 метр дар тарафи рост мебинй.
- Рахмат, чура⁹.
- Саломат бош.

- Мебахшй, ин автобус то беморхонаи «Караболо» 10 меравад?

- Which is the best hotel in Dushanbe?
- I think the best hotel is the "Dushanbe." But the "Tajikistan" and "Avesto" hotels aren't bad either.
- Can you tell me how to get to the "Dushanbe hotel"?
- Get on bus number 3, 40, 42 or 23 or trolleybus number 1 and get off at the "Dushanbe" hotel" or "Sadbarg."
- Can I go there by "marshrutka"?
- Of course, Numbers 3 and 8 go there.
- Thank you very much.
- Goodbye!
- Excuse me, could you drive more quickly, nlease?
- Is everything OK?
- Yes, but I have to be at the airport in ten
- Don't worry, Lord willing, we'll be there in ten minutes.
- Sino, do you know where the State University is?
- Yes, but there are many university buildings. Which faculty do you need?
- I need the physics faculty.
- building. It's on Rudaki Ave.
- Could you tell me how to get there?
- 300m you'll see it on your right.
- Thanks.
- − Bve.
- Excuse me, does this bus go to the "Oarabolo" hospital?

⁴ Истгохи ояндаба is a colloquial form of дар истгохи оянда.

⁵ CYM - this is Russian and means "central department store."

⁶ A colloquial way of saying, "Не, ман ин чо зиндаги намекунам."

⁷ A general repair store that has now become a department store.

^{* &}quot;Худо хохад" (or "Ипшоллох") means "Lord willing."

y Words such as uppa, xonayou, nucapan, and bayan, used to show respect or affection, have not been translated since there are no universal sociolinguistic equivalents, although "love" and "mate" in parts of England and "sugar" in parts of America, along with other such terms of endearment and respect, serve similar functions. 10 Караболо is the spoken form of Карияи Боло, meaning "Upper Village," the name of one of Dushanbe's largest

hospitals.

- Не, холачон⁹, ин намеравад.
- Писарам⁹, ман аз ин чо не, ба ман роха нишон те¹¹.
- Холачон⁹, ба автобуси 18 ё 29 шинед, баъди 2 истгох фуроед.
- Илохи барака ёби, бачам⁹.

12.

- Биёед шинос шавем: ман Ирена, аз Бразилия.
- аз Испания.
- Аз шиносой бо Шумо шодам. Ригина. Шумо дар Бразилия будед?
- Афсус, ки не. Аммо бисёр рафтан мехохам. Шумо чй, дар Испания будед?
- Не, ман хам набудам. Худо хохад, шояд баъди шиносой ба кишвархои хамдигар равем.
- Кошкй.¹²

13.

- Мебахшел, то сафорати Олмон дур-мй?
- Не, дур не, пиёда рафтан мумкин. Тахминан 50 метр рост равед, баъд ба тарафи чап гардед. Сафорат дар тарафи рост аст.
- Рахмати калон.
- Намеарзад.

- No. it doesn't.
- I don't live here, would you tell me the way?
- You should take a number 18 or 29 bus and get off after 2 bus stops.
- God bless vou!
- We've not met: I'm Irena, from Brazil.
- Хеле мамнунам. Номи ман Ригина, ман I'm very pleased to meet you. My name is Rigina; I'm from Spain.
 - I'm pleased to meet you too. Rigina, have you been to Brazil?
 - Sadly, no. But I'd really like to go there. What about you? Have you been to Spain?
 - No. I haven't been there either. Lord willing, once better acquainted, maybe we'll go to each other's countries.
 - If only!
 - Excuse me, is the German Embassy far from
 - No, it isn't. You can go on foot. Go straight ahead about 50m, then turn left. The Embassy is on your right.
 - Thanks a lot.
 - Not at all.

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

The Past Participle

The past participle¹³ has a special place in the Tajiki language. It is used both independently and in compound verbs to express certain verb tenses. The past participle is formed by adding the suffix "-a" to the past tense verb stem:

рафт	рафта	gone
гуфт	гуфта	said
дид	дида	seen
пўшид	пўшида	closed

Used independently, the past participle can also function as an adjective:

дари пўшида closed door соли гузашта last year меваи пухта ripe fruit марди омада a man who has

come

For this adjectival use of the past participle, there is a second form used especially in colloquial Tajiki, that is formed by adding the additional suffix "-zu" to the first form of participle:

кори шудагй finished work китоби хондагй a book that's been хонаи руфтаги a cleaned house read

The past participle is particularly common in compound sentences - that is, when a subject is followed by more than one predicate. In such cases, the Tajiki past participle is similar to the English present participle. Compare the following:

ьачахо оа руии	The children <u>went</u>	Бачахо ба рўйи	Going out to the
ҳавлӣ	<u>out</u> to the yard	ҳавлй	yard, the
<i>баромаданд</i> ва	and played.	баромада, бозй	children played.
_ бозй карданд.		карданд.	
$ar{ extsf{y}}$ китобро р $ar{ extsf{y}}$ йи	He/she <u>put</u> the	У китобро руйи	Putting the book
миз <i>гузошт</i> у	book on the	миз <i>гузошта</i> ,	on the table,
аз хона	table and went	аз хона	he/she went out.
баромад	out.	баромад.	
Чомй маро <i>дид</i> у	Jomi <u>saw</u> me and	Чомй маро дида	Seeing me, Jomi
гуфт «»	said ""	гуфт «»	said, ''''

The past participle is also used to build verb tenses and sometimes with modals, as described in the following pages.

Present Continuous Tense

The present continuous tense is used to describe actions that, at the time of speaking, have begun but are not completed. It is formed from the past participle of the main verb followed by the auxiliary verb ucmodan, which is used to express the person and number of the subject. The subject marker verb endings are suffixed to the past participle of the auxiliary verb ucmodan;

Conjugation of the verb "paфтан" ("to go") in the present continuous tense

рафта	истода-	-ам	(ман) рафта истодаам	I am going
рафта	истода-	- ₩	(ту) рафта истодай	you are going
рафта	истода-	-аст	(ў, вай) рафта истодааст	he/she is going
рафта	истода-	-ем	(мо) рафта истодаем	we are going
рафта	истода-	-ед	(шумо) рафта истодаед	you are going
рафта	истода-	-анд	(онхо) рафта истодаанд	they are going

In some cases, the present continuous is comparable to the present-future tense:

Падарам дар вазорат кор мекунад. Холо ман дар Душанбе зиндагй мекунам.

Падарам дар вазорат кор карда истодааст. Холо ман дар Лушанбе зиндагй карда истодаам.

My father is working in one of the ministries. I am currently living in Dushanhe.

^{11 &}quot;Poxa ишион me" is the spoken form of "Poxpo нишон dex." meaning "Show me the way."

¹² Кошки (or кош) means "If only."

¹³ A participle is a word combining the properties of a verb and an adjective.

Since the auxiliary verb ucmodan does not possess its original meaning of "to stay, to stop" when used in this way, it is usually abbreviated in colloquial Tajiki. The way the present continuous tense is pronounced varies significantly with different dialects: for instance, рафтестам and рафтосам (examples of central/southern dialects) and рафтосиям and pachcodam (examples of northern dialects) all mean "I am going."

Modal Verbs

In Tajiki, there are four modal verbs: masonucman, xocman, fourman, and mourman. The last two of these are only used in the forms bond and wond (although the form meboucm from boucman is also very occasionally encountered). The modals masonucman and xocman are like other verbs in that they are conjugated to show the person and number of the subject, as shown in the following tables. The form given in the first column of the tables is the general form, used in both literary and colloquial Tajiki; the form in the second column is characteristic of literary Tajiki:

Conjugation of the verb "Tabohuctah" ("to be able") in the past tense

рафта тавонистам	тавонистам равам	I was able to go
рафта тавонисти	тавонистй равй	you were able to go
рафта тавонист	тавонист равад	he/she was able to go
рафта тавонистем	тавонистем равем	we were able to go
рафта тавонистед	тавонистед равед	you were able to go
рафта тавонистанд	тавонистанд раванд	they were able to go

Coniugation of the verb "тавонистан" ("to be able") in the future tense

рафта метавонам	метавонам	равам	I can go
рафта метавонй	метавонй	равй	you can go
рафта метавонад	метавонад	равад	he/she can go
рафта метавонем	метавонем	равем	we can go
рафта метавонед	метавонед	равед	you can go
рафта метавонанд	метавонанд	раванд	they can go

In colloquial Tajiki, the present-future form of masonucman is pronounced /metonam/, /metoni/, etc.

Conjugation of the verb "xoctah" ("to want") in the past tense

рафтан хостам	хостам равам	I wanted to go
рафтан хостй	хости рави	you wanted to go
рафтан хост	хост равад	he/she wanted to go
рафтан хостем	хостем равем	we wanted to go
рафтан хостед	хостед равед	you wanted to go
рафтан хостанд	хостанд раванд	they wanted to go

Conjugation of the verb "xoctah" ("to want") in the future tense

рафтан мехохам	мехохам равам	I want to go
рафтан мехохй	мехохй равй	you want to go
рафтан мехохад	мехохад равад	he/she want to go
рафтан мехохем	мехохем равем	we want to go
рафтан мехохед	мехохед равед	you want to go
рафтан мехоханд	мехоханд раванд	they want to go

It should be noted that in the first form, in which the modal follows the main verb, the past participle of the main verb is used with the modal maconucman (e.g. padma masouucmam, padma memasouam), but the infinitive of the main verb is used with the modal xocman (e.g. padman nexoxam, padman xocman). Also, in the first form only the modal verb is conjugated but in the second form both the main verb and the modal are conjugated.

In the first form, the main verb and the modal are always used together, whereas in the second form, in which the modal precedes the main verb, other words in the sentence can come in between the two:

Ман пагох ба Ман пагох ба Норак рафта метавонам. Ман пагох ба Норак рафтан

мехохам.

Норак метавонам равам. Ман пагох ба Норак мехохим равам.

Ман метавонам пагох ба Норак равам.

Ман мехохам пагох ба Норак равам.

I can go to Norak tomorrow.

I want to go to Norak tomorrow.

Use of the modal "бояд" ("must") in the past tense: conjecture

бояд рафта бошам	I must have gone
бояд рафта бошй	you must have gone
бояд рафта бошад	he/she must have gone
бояд рафта бошем	we must have gone
бояд рафта бошед	you must have gone
бояд рафта бощанд	they must have gone

Use of the modal "бояд" ("must") in the past tense: obligation

бояд мерафтам	I had to go / should have gone
бояд мерафтй	you had to go / should have gone
бояд мерафт	he/she had to go / should have gone
бояд мерафтем	we had to go / should have gone
бояд мерафтед	you had to go / should have gone
бояд мерафтанд	they had to go / should have gone

Исмат кани?

- Намедонам. Соат аз панч гузашт, бояд ба хона padma бошад.

Дина ба бонк бояд мерафтам, лекин касал будам.

- Where's Ismat?

- I don't know. It's gone five. He must have gone home.

I should have gone to the bank vesterday but I was ill.

Use of the modal "бояд" ("must") in the future tense

бояд равам	I have to / should go
бояд рави	you have to / should go
бояд равад	he/she has to / should go
бояд равем	we have to / should go
бояд равед	you have to / should go
бояд раванд	they have to / should go

Имрўз бояд ба почта равам.

I have to go to the post office today.

In place of the second form given above for the modal *bond* (i.e. *bond mepadmam*, etc.), the word *dapkop* or *nosum* is more commonly used in colloquial Tajiki:

бояд мерафтам ⇒ рафтанам даркор буд / рафтанам лозим буд, etc. Дируз ту бояд ба Дируз ба вазорат You had to go to the вазорат мерафта. рафтанат даркор ministry yesterday. буд.

In this case, the infinitive of the main verb is used, together with the possessive suffixes to show the person and number of the subject (e.g. $pa\phiman\underline{am}$ $\partial ap\kappa op \delta y \partial$, $pa\phiman\underline{am}$ $\partial ap\kappa op \delta y \partial$, $pa\phiman\underline{am}$ $\partial ap\kappa op \delta y \partial$, etc.). The verb $\delta y \partial$ remains unchanged, irrespective of the number and person of the subject, and indicates that the verb is being used in the past tense.

Without the verb $\delta y \partial$, this form is also used for the future tense; i.e.:

рафтанам даркор ⇒ бояд равам, рафтанат даркор ⇒ бояд равй, etc.

Use of the modal "шояд" ("might") in the past tense: conjecture

шояд рафта бошам	I might have gone
шояд рафта бошй	you might have gone
шояд рафта бошад	he/she might have gone
шояд рафта бошем	we might have gone
шояд рафта бошед	you might have gone
шояд рафта бошанд	they might have gone

Use of the modal "шояд" ("might") in the past tense: conditional

шояд мерафтам	perhaps I would have gone
шояд мерафтй	perhaps you would have gone
шояд мерафт	perhaps he/she would have gone
шояд мерафтем	perhaps we would have gone
шояд мерафтед	perhaps you would have gone
шояд мерафтанд	perhaps they would have gone

- Равшан канӣ?
- Намедонам. Соат аз як гузашт, шояд барои хўрок хўрдан рафта бошад.
- Агар нағз хохиш мекардй, *шояд* мерафті.
- Where's Rayshan?
- I don't know. It's gone one. She might have gone to lunch.

If you had asked him nicely, <u>perhaps he</u> would have gone.

Use of the modal "шояд" ("might") in the future tense

шояд равам	I might go
шояд равй	you might go
шояд равад	he/she might go
шояд равем	we might go
шояд равед	you might go
шояд раванд	they might go

Пагох ба назди вазир шояд равам. I might go see the minister tomorrow.

The modal wond is used to denote the subjunctive—that is, to express hypothesis or contingency. In colloquial Tajiki, there are two other means by which the subjunctive can also be indicated. The first, similar to the use of dapkop or ποσυμ in place of δοπθ stated above, is the use of μυμκυμ instead of wond:

шояд равам ⇒ мумкин равам, etc.

Имруз ман *шояд* ба Имруз ман *мумкин* бозор *равам*.

Имруз ман мумкин ба I might go to the market

today.

The second alternative to the use of \hat{uond} in colloquial Tajiki is to combine the second form of the past participle (e.g. $padpmaz\bar{u}$) with the abbreviated form of the copula, "-cm", and the subject marker verb endings, as shown below. The future tense form is distinguished from the past tense form by taking the prefix "me-":

рафтагистам	I might have gone / perhaps I would have gone
рафтагистй	you might have gone / perhaps you would have gone
рафтагист	he/she might have gone / perhaps he/she would have gone
рафтагистем	we might have gone / perhaps we would have gone
рафтагистед	you might have gone / perhaps you would have gone
рафтагистанд	they might have gone / perhaps they would have gone

мерафтагистам	I might go
мерафтагистй	you might go
мерафтагист	he/she might go
мерафтагистем	we might go
мерафтагистед	you might go
мерафтагистанд	they might go

Падарам фардо *меомадагист*. Онхо кайхо *рафтагистанд*.

- Намедонед, вай дар чои кораш бошад ё не?
- Намедонам, будагист.

My father <u>might come</u> tomorrow. They <u>might have gone</u> a long time ago.

- ney might have gone a long time ago.
 Do you know whether he's at work or not?
- I don't know; perhaps he is.

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

- Rewrite the following sentences using the present-future tense: Ехатрle: Автобуси 3 то майдони хавой (рафтан). ⇒ Автобуси 3 то майдони хавой меравад.
 - а. Мо одатан чойи кабуд (нушидан).
 - b. Падарам хар руз соати 8 ба кор (рафтан).
 - с. Модарам одатан аз хама пештар (хестан).

- d. \bar{y} ба падару модараш зуд-зуд мактуб (навиштан).
- е. Дар тобистон хаво гарм (шудан).
- f. Шумо кай ба Рим (рафтан)?
- g. Хавлиро одатан ки (руфтан)?
- h. То бозори «Саховат» автобусхои 18, 25, 28 ва 29 (рафтан).
- 2. Rewrite the following sentences using the simple past tense:

Example: Дирўз мо қахва (нўшидан).

⇒ Дируз мо қахва <u>нушидем</u>.

- а. Падарам ду руз пеш аз Покистон (омадан).
- Ман имруз соати 6-и пагоҳй (аз хоб хестан).
- с. Ману Солех бо автобуси 29 ба бозори «Саховат» (рафтан).
- d. Дируз Икболро (надидан).
- е. Мебахшед, ман Шуморо (нафахмидан).
- f. Кū (омадан)?
- g. Бародарат кай ба Хучанд (рафтан)?
- h. Шумо ўро (надидан)?
- 3. Rewrite the following sentences using the present continuous tense:

Example: Ман китоб (хондан).

- ⇒ Ман китоб хонда истодаам.
- а. Душанбе руз то руз бехтар (шудан).
- b. Ту чй кор (кардан)?
- с. Онхо ба кучо (рафтан)?
- d. Махбуба ба кй мактуб (навиштан)?
- е. Шумо чй (хўрдан)?
- f. Хаво гарм (шудан).
- g. Мо дар донишгох (хондан).
- 4. Rewrite the following sentences using the descriptive past tense:

Example: Пештар мо дар Бадахшон зиндагй (кардан).

⇒ Пештар мо дар Бадахшон зиндагй <u>мекардем</u>.

- а. Он солхо мо дар донишгох (тахсил кардан).
- Соли гузашта Файзулло зуд-зуд ба бародараш мактуб (навиштан).
- с. Вакте ки ман чавон будам, бисёр футболбозй (кардан).
- d. Дар мактаби миёна \bar{y} аъло 14 (хондан).
- е. Пештар мо тез-тез ба Хучанд, ба назди падару модарамон (рафтан).
- 5. Rewrite the following sentences using the absolute future tense:

Example: Пагох ман Фаррухро (дидан).

⇒ Пагох ман Фаррухро хохам дид.

- а. Бародарат кай аз Берлин (омадан).
- b. Точикистон ободу зебо (шудан).с. Дар тобистон мевахо (пухтан).
- d. Ту (намурдан).
- е. У ба ин чо (наомадан).
- f. Ман инро ҳаргиз¹⁵ ба падарам (нагуфтан).
- g. Заррина фардо маро (дидан).

6. Rewrite the following sentences using the subjunctive:

Example: Рухшона шояд пагох ба шахр (рафтан).

⇒ Рухшона шояд пагох ба шахр равад.

- а. Ман шояд туро (надидан).
- b. Онхо шояд инро (надонистан).
- с. Шояд ин хонаи Рустам (будан).
- d. Дилором шояд хафтаи оянда аз Маскав (омадан).
- е. Шояд ман ўро (дидан).
- f. У шояд бо такси (омадан).
- 7. Rewrite the following sentences using the correct form of the verb in parenthesis and "masonucman":

Example: Ман ин гапро ба ту (нагуфтан).

- ⇒ Ман ин гапро ба ту <u>гуфта наметавонам</u>.
- *⇒ Ман <u>наметавонам</u> ин гапро ба ту <u>гуям</u>.*
- а. \bar{y} фардо ба хонаи мо (наомадан).
- b. Фазлиддин ин корро (кардан).
- с. Онхо хафтаи оянда ба театр (рафтан).
- d. Шумо дар Точикистон бисёр куххоро (дидан).
- е. Писарам (хондан ва навиштан).
- 8. Rewrite the following sentences using the correct form of the verb in parenthesis and "xocman":

Example: Man ypo (dudan).

- *⇔ Ман ўро<u>дидан мехохам</u>.*
- *⇒ Ман <u>мехохам</u> ўро <u>бинам</u>.*
- а. Паула забони точикиро (омухтан).
- b. Мо ба Фаронса (рафтан).
- с. Ту забони англисиро (донистан)?
- d. Чобир дар донишгох (тахсил кардан).
- 9. Rewrite the following sentences using the appropriate form of the verb:

Example: Шояд вай дируз ба хонан падараш (рафтан).

- ⇒ Шояд вай дируз ба хонаи падараш <u>рафта бошад</u>.
- а. Мансур шояд ин хабарро (шунидан).
- b. Онхо шояд кайхо аз он чо (омадан).
- с. Намедонам, шояд як-ду бор (дидан).
- 10. Construct questions based on the following sentences, as shown in the example:

Example: Комрон дируз ба Прага рафт.

- ⇒ Ки дируз ба Прага рафт?
 - ⇒ Комрон кай ба Прага рафт?

⇒ Комрон дируз ба кучо рафт?

- а. Бародарам имруз аз Лондон меояд.
- b. Мо пагохи Чамолро дидем.
- с. Дилафруз панч сол дар Украина зиндаги кард.
- d. Писарам 10 декабр дар шахри Қургонтеппа таваллуд шудааст.

¹⁴ Аъло means "hest, excellent."

¹⁵ Xapzus means "never."

САНЧИШ

QUIZ

 Give answers to the following questions: 1. – Ин автобус то бозори «Баракат» меравад? 	7 Аз Душанбе то Қургонтеппа чанд соат рох аст?
 2. – Шумо дар истгохи оянда мефуроед?	 8. – Шумо ба кор бо автобус меравед?
 3 Мумкин як чизро пурсам?	– 9. – Кинотеатри «Ватан» дар кучост?
4 Мехмонхонаи «Точикистон» дар кучост?	 10. – Шумо дар Япония будед?
 5 То сафорати Олмон чанд истгох аст?	– 11. – Хавопаймо аз Мюнхен кай ба Душанбе меояд?
6. – Ба фурудгох кадом автобусхо мераванд?	 12. – Кадом театрхои Душанберо медонед?
·	
2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the $1, -\dots$?	following answers: 7. – ?
 Ба автобуси 26 савор шавед. 	 Не, ман мошин надорам.
2. – ?	8. – ?
– Мебахшед, намедонам.	 Дар Душанбе 10 донишгох хаст.
3. – ?	9. – ?
 Бозори «Саховат» дар қисмати¹⁶ чанубии шаҳр аст. 	– Тахминан сад метр рост равед, баъд ба тарафи чап гардед.
4. – ?	10. – ?
 Автобус аз Қургонтеппа соати панч меояд. 	 Магозаи китоб дар хиёбони Рудаки аст.
5. – ?	11. – ?
– Се истгох.	 Дар кучан Чехов.
6. – ?	12. – ?
– Не, намефуроям.	 – Қаҳваҳонаи «Ҳаловат» дар ҳиёбони Исмоили Сомонӣ аст.
3. Make up dialogues using the material in	the lesson ten and, if possible, role-play the

he situations with a language helper or other language partner.

4. Describe your home town in Tajiki.

Дарси 11

Lesson 11

Бозор

Market

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

In the life of Eastern people, including Tajiks, the market holds a special place and there are markets in every city and their suburbs. Some markets only take place on certain days of the week, most frequently on Sundays, while others operate every day. For this reason, people often refer to Sunday as pysu 6030p - "market day." In ancient cities, such as Khujand and Istaravshan (formerly Uroteppa), markets consist of different sections, in each of which particular goods are sold. The names of each section are taken from the name of the goods sold there. For instance, pacmau қанноди ("sweet section"), pacmau гуштфуруши ("meat section"), pacmau mesayom ("fruit section"), pacmau cabsasom ("vegetable section"), pacmau равган ("oil section"), растан ширу чургот ("dairy section"), растан охангари ("metal items section"), and pacmau opd ("flour section"). Either inside or beside the market there are usually various stalls or workshops where household items are made and sold such as baskets, knives, combs, coal-shovels, sickles, axes, hammers, hoes, etc. Markets for food, animals, and industrial goods are normally located in different places. At markets it is also possible to find various teahouses (uouxona), national cafes (ouxona), kebab stands, and sambüca stands. In the past, there were stables (capoŭ) close to markets, where men would leave their horses, donkeys, and carts. Even now, some cities still have such capou.

Buying and selling begin early in the morning and continue until quite late. The price of goods is not fixed and each customer must haggle a price with the vendor before buying anything. If an agreed price can't be reached with one trader, the purchaser can simply move on and continue haggling with other vendors. An interesting feature of Tajiki markets is that before buying fruit or other food (including sweets and dairy products) the customer may taste what is being sold, to see what it's like. In markets selling farmyard animals (such as cows and sheep) there is a special person called the даллол. Даллол act as brokers between vendors and purchasers and try to get an agreement between the two sides through their reasoning and pleasing words. As a reward for their service, they usually receive a commission, called хаққи хизмат ("payment for services"), from the trader. In markets it is

possible to buy not only things for daily needs but also various industrial goods.

There are two types of vendor in markets: wholesale and retail. Usually wholesalers do their business at the start of the day. Retailers buying wholesale then do their business

afterwards. The cost of wholesale goods is always cheaper than retail.

The largest markets in the capital are Caxosam, Moxmancyp, Poxu Abpeuum, Bapakam, and Султони Кабир. In addition, goods are sold wholesale in the south of the city on Fridays - a market known as *Yymodosop*. Most neighbourhoods also have their own small markets.

In the decade following independence, the monetary system changed three times. Until 1993, the Soviet system of Russian money continued to be used and was known by both its Russian name, the py6n, and the Tajiki word cym. In August 1993, use of the old Soviet currency was discontinued in Russia and a new Russian currency was introduced in its place,

¹⁶ Kucmani means "part."

¹ The old name for this market was "Eozopu ca63" ("Green Market") and it is still usually referred to by its former Russian name, Зелёный /Zelyoni/.

² Usually known by the name of the district where it is located, "Xaumody dy" ("Eighty-two").

although the former currency continued to be used in Tajikistan until January 1994. At that time, the new Russian currency was also adopted in Tajikistan. Then, in May 1995, a new Tajiki currency was introduced: the Tajiki ργδη, although most referred to it as the cym. Finally, in November 2000, a new Tajiki currency was introduced, the small unit taking its name from that of the currency used in the Samanid dynasty, the dupam, and the large unit simply named after the dynasty, the comonū. One comonū is worth one hundred dupam, and both exist primarily as notes, although some coins are also in circulation.

IIVEA	T
JA J A /A	

VOCABULARY

,		:	
мева / мевачот	fruit	; сабзавот	vegetables
себ	apple	нок/муруд	pear
зардолу	apricot	шафтолу	peach
олу	plum ₋	олуча	cherry
гелос	sweet cherry	бихй	quince
тарбуз	watermelon	; харбуза	melon
ангур	grape	анор	pomegranate
анчир	fig	хурмо	persimmon, date
тут	mulberry	қулфинай, [клубника]³	strawberry
малина	raspberry	марминчон	blackberry
лимў / лимон	lemon	афлесун	orange
мандарин	satsuma, tangerine	ананас	pineapple
банан	banana	мавиз	raisins
зардолуқоқ	dried apricots	нахўдак	dried chick peas
магз	nuts	бодом	almond
чормағз	walnut	писта	pistachios
помидор	tomato	бодиринг	cucumber
салат	lettuce	каланфур	chilli
сир / сирпиёз	garlic	қаланфури	green pepper, bell
[vechok]		булгорй ⁴	pepper
пиёз	onion	пиёзи кабуд	spring onions
боимчон	aubergine, egg-plant	лаблабу	beetroot
картошка	potato	сабзй	carrot
нахуд	chick peas	лўбиё	beans
карам	cabbage	гулкарам	cauliflower
каду	pumpkin	турб	green radish
шалгам	turnip	шалғамча [редиска]	radish
чукрй	rhubarb		
биринч	rice	макарон	pasta
тухм	egg	хасиб	a type of sausage
равган	oil	маска /	butter, margarine
равғани растанй	vegetable oil	равгани зард	
шир	milk	панир	cheese
қаймоқ	creanı	чакка	solid sour yoghurt
[сметана]	sour cream	1	(mixed with water as
цургот / дўг [кефир]	sour curdled milk		a side-dish)

³ Words shown in square brackets are Russian words used in colloquial Tajiki.

асал	honey	мураббо	jam
сирко [уксус]	vinegar	НОС	oral snuff
намак	salt	мурч	ground pepper
кабудй	green herbs	зира	caraway seeds
райхон	basil	кашнич	coriander
пудина	mint	шибит	dill
харидан (хар)	to buy	фурўхтан (фурўш)	to sell
сарф кардан	to spend, to waste	пул додан	to pay
	(money)	баркашидан	to weigh
мондан (мон) /	to put	(баркаш) /	0
гузоштан (гузор)	-	кашидан (каш)	
гирифтан (гир)	to take	чашидан (чаш)	to taste
буридан (бур)	to cut	пўст кандан (кан)	to peel
тоза кардан	to clean	чидан (чин)	to pick
хушк	dried	тар / тару тоза	fresh
пухта, пухтагй	ripe	сероб	juicy
ширин	sweet	турш	sour
тунд / тез	spicy hot	талх	bitter
шӯр	pickled; salty	хом	raw
caxT	hard	мулоим	soft
вазнин	heavy	сабук	light
арзон	cheap	қимат	expensive
дустдошта	favourite	бомаза	tasty, delicious
барин / мисл	like, similar	кулўла / лўнда	rounded
кило	kilo	килобайъ	by the kilo
бандча	small bundle or bunch	линга / линча /	sack
		халта	
дона	piece	; борхалта	bag
тарозу	scales	санги тарозу	(measuring) weight
нарх	price, cost	вазн	weight (in grams)
арзиш	value	пул / сум (дирам,	money (units of
кармонча / хамён	wallet, purse	сомонй)	Tajiki currency)

$C\bar{y}\chi \mathcal{E}AT\chi O$

DIALOGUES

1. [northern dialect]

- Тарбузхо чандпулй шуд?
- Интихоб кунед, савдо мекунем.
- Ана, хаминашба чанд пул дихам?
- Хаштод дирам.
- Инсоф кунед! Арзонтар кунед.
- Чанд пул метид⁵?
- Чил.
- Аз хад зиёд арзон кардед.
- Охираш чанд пул мещад?
- Хафтод.
- Шасту панч медихам.

- How much are the watermelons?
- Choose one and we'll negotiate.
- OK, how much is this one?
- 80 dirams.
- Be fair! Come down in price.
- How much are you offering?
- That's a lot less than it's worth.
- What's your last price?
- 70.
- I'll give you 65 for it.

⁴ In colloquial Tajiki, қаланфури бұлғорй is usually abbreviated to бұлғорй от балғарй.

^{5 &}quot;Menuad" is a spoken form of meduxed.

114 A Beginner's Guide to Tajiki Гиред, майлаш. - OK, take it. - Here's the money. Пулаша гиред. - Мархамат, бақияша гиред. Ош шавад! - Here's your change. Enjoy the food! 2. [exchange between northern and southern dialect speakers] – Кабудй чанд пул шуд? - How much are the greens? - Чор бандчаш дах дирам. - Four bundles for 10 dirams. Панчтогй намешавад? - How about five for the same price? – Майлаш гиред. - OK. take them. - How much are the green peppers? Булгорй чанд пул? - Ten for 10 dirams. – Лах донааш дах дирам. Дуваздахто мегирам. - I'll take twelve. – Майлаш, гиред. Каланфури тез хам - Fine. Do you also want some chillies? мегиред? - Чандпулй? - How much? Панч дона дах дирамда⁷. - Five for ten dirams. - Не, даркор не. Чанд пул дихам? - No, I don't need any. How much do I owe? - Чихо гирифтед? - What did you get? - Панч бандча кабудй ва дувоздах дона - Five bundles of greens and twelve peppers. балгарй. - 20 dirams - Бист дирам мешавад. - Take vour money. Пулаша гиред. - Thanks. – Рахмат. 3. - Салом алейкум! - Hello. - Салом алейкум, мархамат! - Hi. What can I do for you? - Себ чанд пул? - How much is a kilo of apples? - Аввал чашида бинед, себи бисёр ширин. - First have a taste and see - these are very sweet apples. - How much are they? - Чанд пул шуд? Барои Шумо сй дирам медихам. - I'll sell them to you for 30 dirams. - Can't you make them cheaper? - Арзонтар намешавад? - Чанд кило мегиред? Бисёртар гиред, - How many kilos will you buy? If you buy more, I'll make them cheaper. арзонтар мекунам. - Will you sell me two kilos for 50 dirams? - Ду килош панчох дирам, мешавад? Хайр биёед, ман розй. - OK. I agree. - Here's the money. - Мархамат, пулаша гиред. - Ош шавал! - Enjoy the food! - Салом алейкум! - Hello - Салом! Ба Шумо чй даркор? - Hi. What do you need? - A couple of kilos of grapes, please. – Як-ду кило ангур. - Мархамат, чашида бинед. Асал - Please, have a taste. They're like honey.8 мехуред. - Нархаш чанд пул? - How much are they? – Як килош хафтод дирам. - 70 dirams per kilo.

6 "Бақияша" is a colloquial form of бақия + "-au" + "-po", that is "the change."

– Ин қадар қимат? – Чанд пул медихед?

- Як килошба шаст дирам медихам.

- Чанд кило кашам?

Ду кило.

– Мархамат.

Пулаша гиред.

- Хуш омадед!

- Мархамат, орди нагз дорем. Орди Казокистон дорем, аз они Русия хам хаст. Мана инаш орди Нов. Аз каломаш кашем?

- Орди Русия чанд пул?

Килобайъ мегирел ё халташ-катй?¹⁰

Як халта мегирам.

- Як халта гиред, сй сомониба медихем.

Не. намещавал.

Охиращ бисту нухуним, мещад-мй?

- Хайр, биёед.

Мархамат, пулаща хисоб кунед.

– Дуруст, рахмат.

- Салом алейкум!

- Салом, ако, мархамат, чй даркор?

– Ин картошкахои кучо?

- Картошкан Ғарм, ако. Ягон камбудй надорад. Се-чор кило кашам-мй?

- Нархаш чанд пул?

- Як килош бист дирам.

Бисёр кимат-ку?

Чанд кило мегиред?

Се килошба панчох дирам медихам.

- Хайр, биёед, гуфти Шумо шавад.

Сабзй чанд пул?

- Шумоба понздахдирами медихам.

- Не, нашуд. Се килошба чил дирам мелихам.

– Майлаш, биёел.

- Хамаш чанд пул шуд?

- Навад дирам мешавад.

– Мана, пулаща гир.

- Рахмат, акочон, боз биёед.

- Isn't that expensive?

- How much will you give?

- 60 dirams per kilo.

- How many kilos should I weigh out?

- Two kilos.

- There you are.

- Here's your money.

- Come again.9

- Here you are; we've got good flour. We've got flour from Kazakstan and also from Russia. Here, this flour's from Nov. Which would vou like?

- How much is the Russian flour?

- You want to buy it by the kilo or by the sack?

- I'm going to get one sack.

- We'll sell you one sack for thirty somoni.

- How about twenty-nine somoni?

- No. I can't do that.

- My last offer's twenty-nine and a half, OK?

- OK.

- Here, count the money.

- It's right, thank you.

- Hello.

- Hi. What do you need?

- Where are these potatoes from?

- They're from Gharm. There's nothing wrong with them. Shall I weigh three or four kilos for you?

- How much are they?

- 20 dirams per kilo.

- That's expensive, isn't it? - How many kilos will you buy?

- I'll give you 50 dirams for three kilos.

- OK. As you say.

- How much are carrots?

- I'll let you have them for 15 dirams.

- No. How about three kilos for 40 dirams?

- OK.

- What's the total?

- 90 dirams.

- Here vou are.

- Thank you; come again.

^{7 &}quot;Ба дах дирам" - this is pronounced "дах дирамба" in northern dialects and "дах дирамда" in central and southern dialects.

⁸ Literally: "You'll eat honey!"

⁹ Literally: "You're welcome!"

¹⁰ Kamū, or κamū is a postposition of colloquial Tajiki meaning the same as the preposition 60 ("with").

- Зардолукоки нагз доред?
- Рахмат, бародар.
- Намеарзад.

- Do you have some good dried apricots?
- He, акачон, камтар болотар равед, он чо No, but if you go a little further on, there are some there.
 - Thank you.
 - Not at all.

ГРАММАТИКА

GRAMMAR

Derivational Affixes (continued)

In lesson eight information was given about words constructed with the suffix " $-\bar{u}$ " (" $-z\bar{u}$ " and " $-e\bar{u}$ ") and "-ucmon". Prefixes and suffixes are also used to construct nouns and adjectives, the most important of which are indicated in tables 11.1 to 11.4.

Use of adjectives as nouns

Most Tajiki adjectives can be used as nouns in texts¹¹. The most important indicator that such adjectives are being used as nouns is the presence of either one of the plural suffixes ("-xo", "-ou") or the indefinite article suffix ("-e"), though these are not always necessarily used. Compare the following examples:

Mv father is a	Дир⊽з	Yesterday,
wise man.	донишмандони амрикой ба	American scientists came
	Точикистон омаданд.	to Tajikistan.
A <u>wise</u> enemy is better than a <u>foolish</u> friend.	Доно ба иморати сухан машгул аст, нодон ба иморати бадан.	The <u>wise</u> care about new ideas, the <u>fool</u> about his stomach. 12
	My father is a wise man. A wise enemy is better than a	My father is a wise man.Дируз doнишмандони амрикой ба Точикистон омаданд.A wise enemy is better than a foolish friend.Доно ба иморати сухан машгул аст, нодон ба

The conditional mood – use of "azap"

Conditional verbs in Tajiki usually take the word azap. They normally take one of two tenses: past or future; although in colloquial Tajiki they are also used in the present tense. In the future tense, the subjunctive form of the verb (formed by combining the present tense stem with the subject marker verb endings) follows the word azap:

агар равам	if I go
агар равй	if you go
агар равад	if he/she goes
агар равем	if we go
агар равед	if you go
агар раванд	if they go

^{11 (}A process called "субстантиватсия")

Table 11.1 Noun prefix

Prefix	Root	NewNoun	Meaning
	кор	ҳамкор	colleague
хам-	соя	хамсоя	neighbour
	сол	хамсол	peer

Note: In Tajiki there is only the one prefix for forming nouns.

Table 11.2 Noun suffixes

Suffix	Root	New Noun	Meaning
	1. Su	ffixes that form the	name of a place:
Mamou.	гул	гулистон	flower garden
-HCTOH	точик	Точикистон	Tajikistan
	дарахт	дарахтзор	grove
-зор	алаф	алафзор	meadow, pasture
	дониш	донишгох	university
-гох	фуруш	фурушгох	department store
	қанд	қанддон	sugar-bowl
-дон	намак	намакдон	saltcellar
	2. Suffi.	xes that form the na	me of a profession:
	кор	коргар	worker
-гар	охан	охангар	blacksmith
_	чойхона	чойхоначи	tea-house manager
-4 <u>N</u>	шикор	шикорчй	hunter
_	дарвоза	дарвозабон	gatekeeper, goalkeeper
-бон	боғ	богбон	gardener
	3. 3	Suffixes that form a	bstract nouns:
	дон	дониш	knowledge
-иш	хон	хониш	reading
	4. Other	suffixes, forming va	rious types of noun:
	даст	даста	bunch
-a	хафт	хафта	week
	r⊽m	гуша	corner
	рафт	рафтор	behaviour
-op	гуфт	гуфтор	speech
	гунах	гунахгор	sinner
-гор	талаб	талабгор	one who seeks to obtain somethin
*	хост	хостгор	matchmaker
	5. Suffixes that		ality or quantity of nouns:
	хона	хонача	small house, doll's house, sandcas
-ча	бозй	бозича	toy
	корд	кордча	small knife

¹² This is a proverb, literally meaning, "The wise are busy making conversation; the fool with his body."

Table 11.3 Adjective prefixes

Prefix	Root New Adjective		Meaning
	Prefixe	s used to show possessio	n of a quality:
	ақл	боақл	clever, sensible
бо-	одоб	боодоб	polite
	истеъдод	боистеъдод	talented
ба- ¹³	ақл	баақл	clever, wise
	одоб	баодоб	polite
	маза	бамаза	tasty, delicious
	Prefixes	s used to show the absent	ce of a quality:
	ақл	беақл	stupid, foolish
бе-	шарм	бешарм	shameless
	гунох	бегунох	innocent, guiltless
	дон	нодон	ignorant, stupid
HO-	тарс	нотарс	fearless

Table 11.4 Adjective suffixes

Suffix	Root	New Adjective	Meaning
Suff	ixes used to desc	ribe something made f	rom a substance or material:
	санг	сангин	stone
-ин	чӯб	чӯбин	wooden
	хишт	хиштин	brick
	Suffix	es that describe the st	ate of a thing:
	хашм	хашмгин	angry, furious
-ГИН	гам	гамгин	sorrowful, sad
	нам	намнок	humid
-нок	дард	дарднок	painful
	дониш	донишманд	wise, learned
-манд	хунар	хунарманд	skilful, clever
	сарват	сарватманд	rich
14	дон	доно	wise, clever
-O ¹⁴	бин	бино	one who can see
	Suffixe	s used to show a relatio	on to something:
	ранг	ранга	coloured
-a	тобистон	тобистона	for summer, summer's
	бача	бачагона	children's
-она	д⊽ст	дўстона	friendly

In the main clause, that follows this conditional clause, the verb most often takes the present-future tense:

Агар ба шахр равй, бародарамро мебинй. Агар имруз корамон тамом шавад,

пагох истирохат мекунем.

Агар борон наборад, дар бог кор мекунам.

Агар розй бошед, ман пагох меоям. Агар имконият бошад, имруз ба бозор меравем.

In the following examples, the main clause of the sentence is in the imperative: Агар бародарамро бинй, аз ман

салом гйй.

Агар ба бозор равй, ду-се кило себ

Агар нахохед, ин корро пакупед.

Агар пулатон набощад, ба магоза наравед.

If you go to the city, you'll see my brother.

If we finish our work today, tomorrow we're going to rest.

If it doesn't rain, I'm going to work in the garden.

If you agree, I'll come tomorrow. If possible, we're going to the market

If you see my brother, say "hi" to him.

If you go to the market, buy two or three kilos of apples.

If you don't want to, don't do this task. If you don't have enough money, don't go to the shop.

In colloquial Tajiki the word azap is sometimes omitted from the sentence:

Нахохи, нарав.

Хохи, биё, нахохи, не.

If you don't want to, don't go. If you want to, come; if you don't want

to, don't.

When speculating about what might happen or what could have happened, both verbs take the descriptive past tense:

агар мерафтам	if I had gone / if I went
агар мерафтй	if you had gone / if you went
агар мерафт	if he/she had gone / if he/she went
агар мерафтем	if we had gone / if we went
агар мерафтед	if you had gone / if you went
агар мерафтанд	if they had gone / if they went

Агар ўро медидам, ин гапро мегуфтам.

Агар дируз меомади, Хайёмро медиди.

Агар нагз мехоидед, кайхо забони точикиро ёд мегирифтед.

Агар пули бисёр медоштем, як хавлй мехаридем.

Агар 1.000.000 доллар *медоштам*, дар тамоми чахон сайругашт мекардам.

If I had seen him, I would have told him

If you had come yesterday, you would have seen Khayom.

If you had studied well, you would have learnt Tajiki long ago.

If we'd had more money, we would have bought a house.

If I had \$1,000,000, I would travel the whole world.

As can be seen by comparing the last two examples, the difference between "real" conditionals (things that might have been, had circumstances been different) and "unreal" conditionals (things that are impossible or very unlikely to happen) must be determined from the context.

In literary language, especially in poems, the word azup is sometimes abbreviated to zap or ap: Гар ту моро дуст медори, биё. If you love me, come.

¹³ The prefixes " δo -" and " δa -" perform the same function.

¹⁴ The suffix "-o" forms new adjectives from the present tense stem of verbs.

The conditional is also used in other ways. For further information, see the section "A Brief introduction to Tajiki Grammar."

МАШКХО

EXERCISES

1. Construct sentences based on the following table, using the correct verb endings: Example: Ман хар руз аз божр ду кило себ мехарам.

Ман			як		себ	***
Шумо	хар рўз		ду		анор	
Mo			ce	кило	орд	
Онхо	зуд-зуд	аз бозор	чор	TOTTO	ангур	Maran
Ty	хамеща	as 0030p	дах	дона	нон	мехар
Сабур	_		бист	халта	харбуза	
Вай	баъзан		се-чор		тарбуз	
_ Модарам			панч-шаш		сабзй	

- 2. Rewrite the following sentences using the correct form of the verb in parenthesis:
 - а. Мо пештар хар руз аз бозор нон (харидан), холо модарам дар танур нон
 - Пагох ман ба бозор (рафтан) ва чор кило себ, ду кило бодиринг ва се кило картошка (харилан).
 - с. Онхо дар богашон панч дарахти себ, чор дарахти зардолу, ду токи ангур15 ва шаш дарахти нок (доштан).
 - d. Махмуд дирўз панчох кило себ ва сй кило шафтолу (фурўхтан).
 - е. Падарам аз бозор ду тарбузу ду харбуза (овардан).

3. Answer the following questions:

- а. Шумо кадом мевахоро дуст медоред?
- Б. Дар шахри Шумо кадом бозорхо хастанд?
- с. Як кило себ дар шахри Шумо чанд пул аст?
- d. Шумо кадом бозорхои Душанберо медонед?
- е. Як кило ангур 30 дирам ва як кило анор 50 дирам аст. Ду кило ангуру се кило анор чанд пул мешавад?
- f. Кадом мева аз хама ширин аст?
- g. Дируз Шумо аз бозор чй харидед?

4. Create new words by adding the suffixes to the words listed and give the meaning of the new word formed:

a.	The suffix "-ū" ("	-ะนิ"):						
дўст	бародар	сафед	ба	Д	зебо	нагз		мард
доно	кабуд	чавон	пи	p	гарм	хунук		хона
шахр	бахор	об	зам	ин	даст	кор		мактаб
давлат	китоб	Амрико	Олм	OH	Душанбе	точик		англис
<u> </u>	The suffix "-ucmo	и":						
арман	қирғиз афғон	точик	гул	қабр	торик	бахор	κÿχ	кўдак
c.	The suffix "-зор":							
гул	дарахт	себ	TO	K	мева	кабудй		алаф
d.	The suffix "-20x":							
ист	гузар	дон	иш	K	р	фуруш		хоб

¹⁵ In Tajiki, a grapevine is called a "токи ангур."

e. The	suffix "-uw":				
хон (from	дон	омӯз	рав	санч	бур16
хондан)	(донистан)	(ом <u>ў</u> хтан)	(рафтан)	(санчидан)	(буридан)

5. Create new words by adding the prefixes to the words listed and give the meaning of the new word formed:

a. The prefix "xam-":

кор	сол	рох	синф		дил	забон	соя	хона
b.	The prefix	"бе-":						
кор	хона	мева	фарзанд	зан	шавхар	падар	модар	нама

6. Rewrite the sentences using verbs in the conditional mood:

Example: Имруз ман ба мактаб меравам ва муаллимро мебинам.

- а. Модарам дируз ба бозор рафт ва себу ангур харид.
- Саттор ба хонаи мо меояд ва мо харду кор мекунем.
- с. Ту бисёр мехонй ва бисёр чизро медонй.
- d. Дари хона куфл аст ва дар хона касе нест.
- е. Сухроб дируз ба Хучанд рафт ва Майклро дид.

7. Change the tense of the verbs in the following sentences, as shown in the example:

Example: Амин картошка фурухт.

⇒ Амин картошка мефурушад. ⇒ Амин картошка фурухта истидоааст.

⇒ Амин картошка хохад фурухт.

а. Бародарам ба ман мактуб навишт.

- Падарам ба бозор меравал.
- с. Саймон ва Тим ба Шветсия хоханд рафт.
- d. Мо дар вазорат кор карда истодаем.

8. Read the following text and express the same information in English:

Номи ман Илхом аст. Ман падару модар ва як хохар дорам. Падарам, Иброхим, дар мактаб мехонад. Ман хам дар мактаб мехонам. Оилаи мо дар Душанбе, дар хонаи сехучраги зиндаги мекунад. Хонаи мо дар кучаи Борбад аст. Бозори «Саховат» ба хонаи мо хеле наздик аст. Мо зуд-зуд ба ин бозор меравем. Аз бозор мевачоту сабзавот ва дигар чизхои лозими мехарем. Дар Точикистон тамоми сол мевахои тару тоза хастанд. Хамчунин аз бозор бисёр мевахои хушк - магз, зардолукок, мавиз, бодом, чормагз, писта ва гайра харидан мумкин аст. Рузхои истирохат мо ба боги марказй меравем ва он чо истирохат мекунем. Мо шахри худ -Душанберо дуст медорем.

¹⁶ Note: the "p" of the present verb stem of bypudan doubles when it takes a suffix; cf. note at the end of the "Arabic" Plurals" section of "A Brief Introduction to Tajiki Grammar" at the end of the book.

¹⁷ Хучра means the same as уток, so сехучраги means "three-roomed."

ХОНИШ

READING

Read the following stories, retell them in Tajiki in your own words, and discuss the question that follows each of them:

Сето нон

Марде хар руз аз бозор се нон мехарид. Фурушандагон дар хайрат шуданду аз ў пурсиданд:

Мебахшед, амак, чаро Шумо хар руз сето нон мехаред?

Мард гуфт:

- Як нонро барои адои қарз медихам, як нонро қарз медихам, як нонро ману занам мехурем.

Аммо фурушандагон аз ин суханхои у чизе нафахмиданд.

Пас аз чанд руз боз пурсиданд:

- Мебахшед, амак, мо маънои сухани Шуморо нафахмидем.

Мард як табассум карду гуфт:

- Як нонро ба падару модарам медихам, ин адои қарз аст, зеро онхо дар хурдсолиам ба ман медоданд. Як нонро ба фарзандонам медихам, ин карз аст, чунки онхо дар пиронсоли ба мо хоханд дод. Акнун фахмидед?

Рахмат, амак, суханхои Шумо пандомуз аст.

Vocabulary:

ҳайрат	perplexity	қарз	debt
адои қарз	repayment of debt	табассум	smile
зеро / чунки	for, because of	хурдсолй	young age
пиронсолй	old age	акнун	now
пандом⊽з	moralistic		

Translation of some expressions and idioms:

Аз суханхои Шумо чизе нафахмидем /	There's something you said that we didn't
Маънои суханхои Шуморо	understand. / We didn't understand what
нафахмидем.	you said.
Акнун фахмидед?	Now do you understand?
Суханони Шумо пандомуз аст.	What you say has a good moral.

Discuss the following:

Чавонон ба падару модарашон ва пиронсолони дигар чй хел эхтиром карда метавонанд?

More useful vocabulary:

эхтиром кардан	to respect, to nonour

То ки дигарон хуранд

Бачаи хурдсоле аз назди бог мегузашт. Дид, ки муйсафеде дарахт мешинонад. Пурсид:

- Бобочон. Шумо чй кор карда истодаед?
- Дарахтхои себу зардолу мешинонам.
- Охир Шумо пир шудед, мевахои онро намехуред-ку?
- Дигарон шинонданд, мо хүрдем, мо мешинонем, то ки дигарон хүранд.

Vocabulary: шинондан

to plant

: то ки

so that

Translation of some expressions and idioms:

Охир Шумо пир шудед, мевахои онро

намехуред-ку? Дигарон шинонданд.

vou? Others planted.

Discuss the following:

Ба назари Шумо, маънои асосии ин хикоят чист?

САНЧИШ

OUIZ

But you are old; you won't eat its fruit, will

1. Give answers to the following questions: 1. – Ба Шумо чй даркор?

2. – Як кило анор чанд пул?

3. - Ба бозори «Баракат» чй хел рафтан мумкин?

4. – Арзонтар намешавад?

5. - Шумо аз бозор чй харидед?

7. – **И**н орди кучо?

8. - Се килош як сомонй, мешавад?

9. – Шумо маъмулан аз кадом бозор меваю сабзавот мехаред?

10. - Ту кай ба бозор меравй?

11. – Падарат аз бозор чй овард?

6. – Дар Душанбе кадом бозорхо хастанд? 12. – Ин автобус то бозори «Шохмансур» меравад?

-

2. Fill in the questions corresponding with the following answers:

- Не, ман ба бозор намеравам.

2. - ... ?- Ду кило себу чор кило ангур харидам.

-

Агар бисёр гиред, арзон мекунам.

Ба автобуси 29 ё 18 шинед.

5. – ... ?

Мебахшед, намедонам.

6. – ... ?

– Як килош чил дирам

7. - ... ?

Падарам дируз ба бозор рафт.

- Аввал чашида бинед, асал барин ширин.

9. – ... ?

- Як соат пеш омадам.

- Не, ин бозори «Саховат» не.

 $11. - \dots ?$

Рахмат, боз биёед.

12. – ... ?

Бақияша гиред.

- 3. Make up dialogues using the material in lesson eleven and, if possible, role-play the situations with a language helper or other language partner.
- 4. Write a description about yourself similar to that in exercise 8.

button

Дарси 12

Lesson 12

Дар магоза

At the Shop

ШАРХ

COMMENTARY

During the Soviet period, every shop was owned by the state and prices were fixed. Most interestingly, the price of goods was the same throughout the Soviet Union, irrespective of where they were made. For instance, the price of sugar, which was produced in the Ukraine, cost the same in the Ukraine itself, in Central Asia, in Siberia, and in the Far East.

Shops specialised in selling one particular item and took their name from this item: for instance, магозаи китоб ("bookshop"), магозаи гуит ("butcher's"), магозаи хурокворй ("grocery store"), магозаи пои ("bakery"), магозаи газворхо ("textiles shop"), магозаи пойафзол ("shoe shop"), магозаи молхои хочагй ("home-made goods shop"), магозаи молхои сохимон ("outlet for building materials"), магозаи чавохирот ("jeweler's"), etc. Now, most shops can be separated into one of two groups: food shops and industrial products shops. Only in the largest shops can departments for special vendors be seen. In addition to these, however, there are also special shops selling furniture, factory-made goods, home-made goods, and jewellery.

Now, since almost all shops are privately owned, prices are no longer fixed. As in the markets, customers haggle with retailers in shops to obtain a reasonably cheap price. Consequently, it is possible to hear about various prices for the same item even in the same shop. Usually, goods in shops in the centre of town are more expensive than in shops close to or inside the markets. When buying an item, it is better to find out the price in a number of departments or shops and then to choose where to buy it.

Most shops have a sign announcing: «Чизи фурухташуда баргардопида ё иваз карда памешавад» - "No refunds or exchanges." However, it is sometimes possible to negotiate with retailers so that if you don't like the purchased item they will replace it or give a refund.

ЛУҒАТ

VOCABULARY

хўрокворй молхо / молхои саноатй магозаи китоб	groceries, food goods / industrial goods book shop entrance	мағозаи хўрокворй магозаи молхои саноатй фурушгох	grocery shop (not selling food) department store
даромадгох киоск	entrance kiosk	[универмаг] ¹ баромадгох	exit
шўъба	department / section	дукон / устохона	workshop
	of a store	√Олами к <u>⊽</u> дакон»²	"Childrens' World"
харидор	customer	фурушанда	retailer
чиз	thing	дона	piece, item
бонка /banka/	jar, tin	шиша	bottle; glass
қуттй	box/pack	зарф	dishes, tableware
арзон	cheap	кимат	expensive

¹ Words shown in square brackets are Russian words used in colloquial Tajiki.

100 DV	price, cost	бақия	change
нарх андоза [размер]	size	ранг	colour
навъ	sort	вазн	weight
ягон / ягон хел	any / some kind of	1	necessity
		Зарурият	to sell
харидан (хар)	to buy	фурухтан (фуруш)	
санчидан (санч) /	to try, to test	ба зебидан (зеб)	to suit smb.
пўшида дидан		пўшидан (пўш)	to dress (oneself)
маслихат додан	to give advice (to	маслихат кардан	to ask advice, to
	smb.)	<u> </u>	consult
– чанд пул? / ч	нанд сўм?	- How much does c	ost?
– Чанд пул шуд?	_	– What's the total?	
 Ба Шумо чй дарк 	op?	– What do you need?	
– Ба ман дихед.		– Give me a, please	
 Мархамат, гиред. 		– Here you are. [offer	ing]
– (Ба ман) маъкул.		– I like it.	
Навиштачоти боло	н магозахо ва дўконхо	Shop signs	
нон	bread	i rymt	meat
туҳфаҳо	gifts; souvenirs	чавохирот	jewellery
молхои сохтмон	building materials	молхои хочагй	everyday things
мебел	furniture	газворхо	textiles, fabrics
пойафзол	shoes	таъмири пойафзол	shoe repair
соат	watches	таъмири соат	watch repair
гушти гов	beef	гўшти гўсфанд	mutton
кима	mince. minced meat	гушти лахм	deboned meat
·	chicken	Н МОХЙ	fish
мург		[икра]	caviar
тухм	egg flat, round bread	1 2 7 45	loaf of bread
НОН	bread roll; biscuit	[хлеб]	long loaf of bread
кулча		[батон]	flour
чаппотй	thin, flat bread	орд	salt
панир	cheese	намак	
шакар	sugar	қанд	sugar; sweets halva
набот ³	"nabot"	халво4	
шир	milk	яхмос	ice-cream
чой	tea	кахва	coffee
шарбат [сок]	juice 	пиво	beer
арақ	vodka, spirits	шароб / май [вино]	wine
либос	clothes	матоъ	material
[свитер]	sweater, jumper	чемпир	cardigan
шим	trousers	доман [106ка]	skirt
майка	vest; T-shirt	; синабанд	bra
курта	dress, shirt	рўмол	headscarf
куртка	leather jacket, coat	рўмолча	handkerchief
кастум	suit	эзор / почома	ladies' underwear
пичак	jacket	цома	men's full-length
пўстин	fur-coat		velvet coat
палто	overcoat	халат	dressing gown, robe
		;	1

тугма

борони [плаш]

rain-coat

² A specialist shop in the centre of Dushanbe selling children's goods.

³ Habom is a national sweet made of crystalised sugar.

⁴ Xanso is a national sweetmeat made with sesame seeds and honey.

тоқй / туппй	national hat	салла	turban
кулох	hat	телпак	winter-hat
шарф	scarf	дастпушак	glove
галстук	tie	чатр	umbrella
ч ў роб	thick socks	пайпок	thin socks
пойафзол / туфлй	shoes	[колготки]/kalgotki/	tights
калуш	national shoe	махсй /massi/	long national boot
патинка	boots	мӯза	long boots
мардона	men's	занона	women's
бачагона	children's	зимистона	for winter
тобистона	for summer	бахорй	for spring
нагз	good	ганда	bad
кимат	expensive	арзон	cheap
сабук	light	вазнин	heavy
гарм	hot	салкин	cool
нав / тоза	fresh, new	бомаза	tasty, delicious
фоиданок	useful, healthy	зарур	necessary
қоим	suitable	беранг	colourless
сиёх	black	сафед	white
сабз	green	зард	vellow
сурх	red	кабуд	blue
гулобй гулобй	pink	осмонй	light blue
қахваранг	brown	норинчй	orange
хокистарй	grev	фомил / фомилй	black {tea}5
безеб	ugly, unattractive	атлас	"atlas" silk ⁶
дағал / дурушт	coarse, rough	махин	delicate, soft, thin
пахта; пахтагй	cotton (n; adj)	пашм; пашмин	wool; woollen
абрешим;	silk (n; adj)	чарм; чармин	leather (n; adj)
абрешимй	2 (, 3)	,p	(,
китоб	book	китоби бадей	novel, fictional book
китоби дарсй	textbook	сахифа	page (of a book)
луғат	dictionary	боб	chapter (of a book)
дафтар	note-book	чилд	volume (of a book)
рўзнома [газета]	newspaper	шумора	edition (of book,
мачалла [журнал]	magazine	Тумори	newspaper, etc.)
конверт / лифофа	envelope	марка	stamp
когаз	paper	ручка	pen
калам	pencil	бур	chalk
•	television	дарзмол / газмол	iron (for clothes)
телевизор	radio	магнитофон	tape recorder
радио	computer	кассета	cassette
компютер	camera	плёнка /	camera film
суратгирак		фотоплёнка	camerajum
сумка	bag, purse watch	айнак	glasses
COAT			necklace
ангуштарин	ring	гарданбанд	heckiace bracelet
халқа / гушвор /	earring	дастпона	
гўшвора		сигор / сигарет	cigarettes
собун	soap	шампун	shampoo

атр /atir/	perfume	гул	flower
садбарг	rose	лола	tulip
наргис	daffodil	мехчагул	carnation

СЎХБАТХО

DIALOGUES

CJADATAO	DIALOGOLS
 I. [northern dialect] Шумо майкаи мардона доред? Не, надорам. Намедонед, дар кучо бошад? Хо, ана вай магазинба равед, будагист? Рахмат. Намеарзад. 	 Have you got any men's T-shirts? No, I haven't. Do you know where there are any? Yes, go to that shop, they should have some. Thanks. Not at all.
 2. Мебахшед, Шумо луғати русй-точикй доред? Ха, дорам. Дидан мумкин? Мархамат. Нархаш чанд пул? Дах сомонй, мехаред? Ха, мегирам. Мана, пулаша хисоб кунед. Дуруст. Барои харидатон рахмат. Саломат бошед. 	 Excuse me, have you got a Russian-Tajiki dictionary? Yes, I have. Can I see it? Please do. How much is it? Ten somoni. Are you going to buy it? Yes, I'll take it. Here - count the money. It's right. Thanks for your custom. Goodbye.
3. [northern dialect] - Мебахшед, вай галстука як бор нишон тид8. - Хамина? - Не, хо ана ваяша.9 - Мархамат. - Ин чанд пул? - Дувоздах сомонй. - Ин кадар кимат? Арзонтар кунед. - Чойи шудаш10 ёздах сомонй. Мегиредмй? - Майлаш, мегирам. Мана, пулаш. - Рахмат! Насиб кунад!11 - Саломат бошед!	 Excuse me, can you show me that tie? This one? No, that one. Here you are. How much is it? Twelve somoni. That's expensive! Make it cheaper. My last price is eleven somoni. Will you buy it? OK, I'll take it. Here's the money. Thanks. Enjoy wearing it! Goodbye.
 4. [southern dialect] Чй тиям, ака? Ягон араки тоза дорй? Барон Шумо меёбам. Ана мархамат. 	– What can I offer you, sir? – Have you got some good vodka? – I'll have a look for you. Here you are.

 ⁵ Чойи фомил от чойи фомилй is literary Tajiki for "black tea," colloquially чойи сиёх.
 ⁶ Amnac is a traditional multi-coloured stripe-patterned silk material found throughout Central Asia.

⁷ Будагист means the same as "шояд бошад" — "there should be some."

* "Tud" is a colloquial form of дахед.

9 "Ваяша" is a colloquial form of ваяшро = вай +"-аш" +"-ро"

10 "Чои шудаш" means the same as охираш: "ту (literally, 'its') last price."

11 "Насиб кунад" is a blessing expressing the hope that someone would enjoy what they have bought, or built, etc.

- Чанд пул?
- Яку ним сомонй.
- Ма, пулаша гир.
- Боз ягон чиз тиям?
- Не, дигар хеч чиз лозим не.
- Хуш омадед, ака!
- 5.
- Ин орди кучо?
- Орди Қазоқистон.
- Килош чанд пул?
- Панчох дирам. Чанд кило баркашам?
- Панч кило кашед. Чанд пул мешавад?
- Панч килош? Хозир хисоб мекунам...дуву ним сомонй.
- Мархамат, пулаш.
- Бакияша гиред.
- 6. [colloquial]
- Салом алейкум. Мархамат, биёед.
- Салом алейкум, ягон шиму куртаи бачагона доред?
- Писаратон чандсола?
- Дахсола.
- Барои дахсолахо мана инаш бисёр нагз.
 Як бинед.
- Духту рангаш маъкул, лекин метарсам, ки хурд набошад.
- Хурд набудагист, лекин агар хурд бошад, биёред, калонтарашба алиш¹² карда метиям¹³.
- Нархаш чанд пул?
- Шим дах сомонй, курта панч сомонй.
- Арзонтар намекунед?
- Не, ман чойи шудаша гуфтам, ин моли тоза.
- Хайр, майлаш, мегирам, лекин агар хурд бошад пагох меорам.
- Майлаш, биёред, дигараша мегиред.
- Мана, пулаша хисоб кунед.
- Ха, дуруст, насиб кунад.
- Саломат бошед.

- How much?
- 1.5 somoni.
- Here you are.
- Can I get you anything else?
- No, I don't need anything else.
- Goodbye.
- Where's this flour from?
- It's from Kazakstan.
- How much per kilo?
- 50 dirams. How many kilos shall I measure?
- Weigh out five kilos. How much will that he?
- Five kilos? I'll calculate it...2.5 somoni.
- Here's the money.
- And here's your change.
- Hello. Please, come in.
- Hello. Have you got any trousers and shirts for a boy
- How old is your son?
- He's ten.
- This is a very nice outfit for a ten-year-old.

 Take a look.
- It's made well and is a good colour, but I'm afraid it might be a bit small.
- It shouldn't be too small, but if it is, bring it back and I'll change it for a larger one.
- How much is it?
- Ten somoni for the trousers, five somoni for the shirt.
- Can't you make it cheaper?
- No, I told you the last price; it's a good item
- OK, I'll take it, but if it's too small I'll bring it back tomorrow.
- Fine, if you bring it back, I'll give you another.
- Here, count the money.
- Yes. it's right. I hope they're OK.
- Goodbve.
- 12 Алиш кардан is colloquial Tajiki, meaning the same as иваз кардан "to change."
- "Memuam" is a colloquial, abbreviated form of meduxam "I will give" (or "I give").

- 7.
- Ба Шумо чй даркор?
- Ягон шими нагз доред?
- Ҳа, ҳаст. Ба Шумо кадом рангаш маъқул?
- Хокистарй.
- Андозааш¹⁴ чанд?
- Андозаи 48.
- Мархамат, як бинед.
- Пушида дидан мумкин?
- Ха. албатта. Ба ин чо гузаред.
- Мебахшед, ин камтар хурд.
 Калонтараш ҳаст?
- Мана инаша бинед. Андозаи 50.
- Ба фикрам инаш қоим. Чанд пул?
- Панчох сомонй.
- Мархамат, пулаша гиред.
- 8.
- Мархамат, чй тиям?
- Як кило гушту як қуттй чойи кабуд.
- Мархамат, боз ягон чиз даркор?
- Равгани зарду панир доред?
- Албатта.
- Нимкилой дихед.
- Мархамат. Боз?
- Дигар хеч чиз лозим не. Хамааш чанд пул шуд?
- Хозир хисоб мекунем: як кило гушт се сомонй, як куттй чой – 70 дирам, ним кило равган як сомонию хаштод дирам ва ним кило панир як сомонию навад дирам. Хамагй – хафт сомонию чил дирам мешавад.
- Мархамат, пулаша гиред.
- Ин шаст дирам бақияаш. Барои харидатон рахмат.
- Саломат бошед.

9. [northern dialect]

- Салом алейкум.
- Салом. Мархамат, чй даркор?
- Мебахшед, барон омухтани комплотер ягон китоби нагз доред-мй?
- Як китоби нагз дорам, аз англиси тарчума шудаги.
- Номаш чй?
- Номаш «Микрософт оффис».
- Як бор нишон тид.
- 14 Or, more colloquially. Размераш.

- What do you need?
- Have you got some good trousers?
- Yes, there are some. What colour would vou like?
- Grey.
- What size?
- Size 48.
- Here, take a look at these.
- Can I try them on?
- Of course. Go in here.
- I'm sorry, these are a little small. Do you have a larger pair?
- Here, try these. They're size 50.
- I think they'll do. How much?
- Fifty somoni.
- Here you are.
- What can I get you?
- -- One kilo of meat and one packet of green tea.
- There you are. Anything else?
- Have you got any butter and cheese?
- Of course.
- Give me half a kilo of each.
- There you are. Anything else?
- I don't need anything else. What's the total?
- Let me count: one kilo of meat three somoni, one packet of tea – 70 dirams, half a kilo of oil – one somoni 80 dirams, and half a kilo of cheese – one somoni 90 dirams. A total of seven somoni 40 dirams.
- There you are.
- Here's 60 dirams change. Thanks for your custom.
- Thanks. Goodbye.
- Hello.
- Hi. What do you need?
- Excuse me, do you have a good book for learning about computers.
- I've got one good book that's been translated from English.
- What's it called?
- "Microsoft Office."
- Can you show it to me?